



Second Term 2023

# Theme (3) My society



Hobbies and free-time activities الهوايات وأنشطة أوقات الفراغ



- → talk about hobbies and free-time activities.
- → identify, understand, and use verbs + -ing.
- → use pie charts to make comparisons.
- read and understand a poem about hobbies.
- → learn about free-time activities in Ancient Egypt.
- ▶ write an email to a friend.
- > read and understand a story about a camping trip

### Objectives

| Vocabulary                             | Free-time activities and collocations: do arts and crafts, go camping, go hiking, go skiing, have a picnic, make new friends, play sports, put on sunscreen, put up a tent, record a video  Free-time activities in Ancient Egypt: archery, boxing, a chariot race, a board game, fishing, hunting, wrestling  Adjectives: awesome, cool, gorgeous  Camping: campfire, drop a pin on a map, guide, picnic table, (phone) reception, trail |  |  |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
| Language                               | <ul> <li>I enjoy spending time outside.</li> <li>They hate eating onion on their burgers.</li> <li>Do you like watching TV?</li> <li>Swimming is more popular than painting.</li> <li>Yes, I do.</li> <li>Swimming is the most popular activity.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                               |  |  |
| Reading                                | - A children's magazine article about hobbies; blogs about free-time activities; a poem about hobbies; a story about free-time activities in Ancient Egypt; a story about a camping trip                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |  |
| Writing                                | <ul> <li>Preparing pie charts to show the results of a survey; writing a verse of a<br/>poem; organizing, planning, and writing an email to a friend</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |  |
| Speaking                               | <ul> <li>Talking about free-time activities; asking and answering questions for a<br/>survey; comparing the results of a survey</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |  |  |
| Listening                              | - A classroom survey; a discussion about the results of a survey                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  |  |
| Life skills                            | Resilience: the importance of working together Self-management: learning to be part of a team                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |  |  |
| Values                                 | Cooperation and respect                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |  |  |
| Issues and challenges                  | Social participation Environmental responsibility                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |  |  |
| Integrated cross-<br>curriculum topics | History: free-time activities in Ancient Egypt                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |  |  |

# Lesson 1 (Favorite sports and hobbies



### الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



have free time لديه وقت فراغ



**do hobbies** يمارس هوايات



do arts and crafts / يمارس الفنون والحرف اليدوية إ



do origami يمارس فن قص وتشكيل الورق



go camping ىذھى للتخىيم



**go hiking** ، يذهب في نزهة سيرًا على الأقدام



**go skiing** يذهب للتزلج على الجليد



**go swimming** پذهب للسياحة



play sports یلعب ریاضة



play football يلعب كرة القدم



have a picnic يستمتع بنزهة خلوية



put on sunscreen ريضع كريم واق من الشمس



put up a tent ینصب خیمة



record a video پسجل ڤيديو



make new friends / يُكون أصدقاء جُدد



spend time یقضی وقت

Lesson '

| Extr             | a Vocabulary  | ضافیة          | کلمات إ  | L,            |
|------------------|---------------|----------------|----------|---------------|
| magazine         | مجلة          | busy with my s | schoolw  | ork           |
|                  |               | <br>           | المدرسية | مشغول بأعمالي |
| popular          | مشهور - محبوب | space rockets  |          | صواريخ الفضاء |
| around the world | حول العالم    | green spaces   |          | مساحات خضراء  |
| country          | دولة          | warm           |          | دافىئ         |
| team sport       | فریق جماعی    | get wet        |          | يبتلّ         |
| best friend      | أفضل صديق     | indoors        |          | داخل مبنی     |
| trip             | رحلة          | outdoors       |          | ِخارج مبنہ    |

# Countries & Places:

| Egypt (Capital: Cairo | صر (العاصمة: القاهرة) (( | Colombia       | كولومبيا        |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Norway                | النرويج                  | Western Desert | الصحراء الغربية |
| Canada                | كندا                     | Siwa Oasis     | واحة سيوة       |

# Conjugation of Verbs

# Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

|        | Present |              | Past     | PP       |
|--------|---------|--------------|----------|----------|
| ask    |         | يسأل         | asked    | asked    |
| answer |         | يجيب         | answered | answered |
| play   |         | يلعب         | played   | played   |
| rain   |         | تمطر         | rained   | rained   |
| want   |         | یرید - یرغب  | wanted   | wanted   |
| record |         | يسجل         | recorded | recorded |
| post   |         | ينشُر        | posted   | posted   |
| like   | 'n      | یعجب با - یح | liked    | liked    |
| use    |         | يستخدم       | used     | used     |

Connect Plus 5 - 5

### الأفعال غير المنتظمة Irregular verbs

| Present          |             | Past       | PP       |
|------------------|-------------|------------|----------|
| be (am- is -are) | یکون        | was - were | been     |
| do               | يفعل        | did        | done     |
| put              | يضع         | put        | put      |
| make             | يصنع - يجعل | made       | made     |
| meet             | يقابل       | met        | met      |
| spend            | يقضي وقت    | spent      | spent    |
| go               | يذهب        | went       | gone     |
| know             | يعرف        | knew       | known    |
| get sick         | يمرض        | got sick   | got sick |
| feel             | يشعر        | felt       | felt     |
| swim             | يسبح        | swam       | swum     |
| show             | يعرض        | showed     | shown    |

### Did you know?

هل تعلم؟

People who have hobbies are happier and more relaxed. Hobbies can also make you more creative.

الناس الذين يمارسون الهوايات هم أكثر سعادة وأكثر استرخاءًا، كما يمكن أن تجعلك الهوايات أكثر إبداعًا.



### Read and learn

### Hobbies around the world

We asked children around the world to answer the question, "What do you do in your free time •?" Here are some of their answers.



Many sports are popular ② in my country, but the most popular sport is football. I play football with my friends on a team. The only problem is that the sun is very strong here in Cairo. So, I always put on sunscreen ③ before

I play a football match. For me, the best part about playing a team sport 4 is when I make كريم واق من الشمس 3

new friends 6. That's how I met my best friend, وياضة جماعية 5 That's how I met my best friend, الماضة جماعية 5 أكوّن أصدقاء جدد 5 أكوّن أصدقاء جدد

### Hobbies around the world



People in my country like to spend their free time outside, and I do, too. My family and I go camping 6 a lot in the summer, so it's very important to know how to put up a tent o! The weather can change very fast in Norway, and you don't want to get wet - especially if it's cold out. We also go hiking all summer. and then in the winter, we go skiing 9 down the mountains. I feel very happy when I spend time in the mountains.



Daniel

Colombia

There are a lot of different ways that people spend their free time here in Canada. When it's warm out, people have a picnic o in the park. We have a lot of green spaces on in my city, but the only problem is that it rains a lot. So, when 6 نذهب للتخبيم it's raining, I go swimming. The pool is indoors so

- - 7 تنصب خیمق
- 🔞 نذهب في نزهة سيرًا على الأقدام
  - 🧿 نذهب للتزلج على الحليد
  - 🚺 نزهة خلوية
- 🔑 أمارس الفنون والحرف البدوية
- 🚯 فن قص وتشكيل الورق
- 🙆 نسجل ڤيديو
  - 🗗 ننشره

we don't have to worry about the rain or even the very cold winters which we have here.

I don't have a lot of free time because I am very busy with my schoolwork. But when I do have free time, I do arts and crafts . Do you know origami®? This is a craft which is from Japan, and مساحات خضراء 🕕 you use paper to make the shapes of animals, space rockets, or almost anything. It's not very popular here in Colombia where I live, but my friends and I like it a lot. Sometimes we record a video @ and post it online to show other people how to make our favorite origami animals.

### **Grammar Study**

### go - play - do - have - make - put up - put on - record - spend

(go - play - do - have - make - put up - put on - record - spend) لاحظ استخدام الأفعال [] فَى التعسرات الأَتية:

- go camping بذهب في نزهة سيرًا على الأقدام go hiking 🕨 يذهب للتخييم
- go skiing يذهب للتزلج على الجليد پذهب ل يذهب للسياحة

play

play sports play football پلعب رياضة ىلعى كرة القدم

Connect Plus 5

### Unit 5 do do hobbies يمارس هوايات do origami يقوم بفن قص وتشكيل الورق do arts and crafts يقوم بالفنون والحرف اليدوية have لديه وقت فراغ have free time ىستمتع ىنزھة خلوية have a picnic make make new friends بكون أصدقاء حُدد put up put up a tent ىنصى خىمة put on put on sunscreen يضع كريم واق من الشمس record record a video يسجل ڤيديو spend spend time يقضى وقت Remember تذكر We use the verb (go) with the (ing) activities and sports. 🛄 نستخدم فعل (go) مع الأنشطة والرياضات المنتهية بـ (ing games) 🔫 (ing): go swimming – go cycling – go shopping – go fishing We use the verb (play) with the (ball games). 🔲 نستخده فعل (play) مع الرياضات التي تلعب بالكرة 📢 (ball games): play basketball - play tennis - play volleyball - play handball We use the verb (do) with the other games. 🛄 نستخدم فعل (do) مع بقية الرياضات 🦊 (other games):

do karate - do judo

# Exercises on Lesson (1

# Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

# do – popular – make – play – put on

Many sports are 
in my country, but the most popular sport is football. I 
football with my friends on a team.

The only problem is that the sun is very strong here in Cairo. So, I always sunscreen before I play a football match. For me, the best part about playing a team sport is when I 
new friends. That's how I met my best friend, Fares. We met playing football.

# 2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

### craft - record - have - free time - do

Hatem: Hello, Daniel. How are you?

Daniel: Hello, Hatem. Fine, I hope you are too.

Hatem: Do you have much Daniel?

Daniel: I don't have a lot of free time because I am very busy with my

schoolwork.

Hatem: What do you do when you have some free time?

Daniel: I arts and crafts. Do you know origami?

Hatem: No, I don't.

**Daniel:** This is a \_\_\_\_\_ from Japan, and you use paper to

make the shapes of animals, space rockets, or almost anything.

**Hatem:** What else do you do when you have free time?

Daniel: Sometimes I a video and post it online to

show other people my origami works.

# 3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. They sometimes (go play do have) hiking in the Red Sea Trail.
- 2. Children like (getting having playing making) sports.
- 3. We (have -go do play) swimming when it's hot.
- 4. My sisters always (put record go do) a video when they have a party.

- 5. Do you like (doing making playing having) arts and crafts?
- 6. Do you always (go play do put) hobbies in your free time?
- 7. She usually (goes puts does has) on sunscreen when she's out.
- 8. Most families (play do go have) picnics on Sham El Nasim Day.
- 9. My dad always (makes goes puts does) new friends when he goes anywhere.
- **10.** She cooks the food when they (have -go do play) camping.
- 11. Can you (go play do put) up a tent?
- 12. I usually (make spend put do) much time talking on the phone.
- Read the following text and answer the questions: Activity Book

Hi, my name's Seleem. Every year, my family goes camping in the Siwa Oasis in the Western Desert. This year, I recorded a video of our trip for the first time. It's really hot in the desert, so we always put on sunscreen during the day! My little sister likes to help Dad put up the tent... but she can't do it. She's only four! We sometimes go hiking in the early morning because it's cooler.

There are also places where we can go swimming. We always take a lot of water to drink, and we usually have a picnic for lunch. In the evening, we cook dinner on a fire. This is my favorite part of the day. I like looking at the stars in the night sky while Dad tells us stories. It's fun!

- 1. Where does Seleem's family go camping every year?
  - .
- 2. What did Seleem do for the first time this year?
- •
- 3. Who wants to help Dad put up the tent?
- 4. Why do they go hiking in the morning?
- .
- 5. What do they take a lot of?
- What do they take a lot or:
- 6. What do they do in the evening?

# Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

**1.** sports – my country – Many – popular – in – are.

.....

2. popular – most – Football – sport – the – is.

3. summer – We – camping – go – in – the.

.

4. fast – The – weather – change – in Norway – can.

5. winter – the – skiing – go – in – We.

6. I – time – like to – spend – the mountains – in.

.

7. time – have – I – a lot of – free – don't.

8. and – crafts – you – arts – Do – do?

?

9. craft – Origami – from – is – Japan – a.

10. Emily – It – lives – often – rains – where.

11. videos – Do – online – post – your – you?

**12.** activity – free-time – What – like – you – do?

# 6 Write the suitable word (phrase) from the lesson:

1. "I want to go for a walk with my friends."

2. "Let's eat lunch in the park."

3. "Lara makes toy animals with paper and paints them."

4. "It's very hot today, so I'll put this on my face."

5. "We're going to sleep in a tent on vacation."

6. "I can use my phone to do this."

# 7 Complete the email with the correct verbs:

I'm on vacation with my family in Dahab near the Red Sea. We always

camping in the summer. I love sleeping under the stars. I
usually help my dad to 
swimming in the sea every day. The water is so warm.

The sun's really hot, though. You have to 
a picnic on the beach. Mom takes all our favorite food. I always 
new friends on vacation, too.

I met some children from Cairo, and they're camping near us. We're going to 
hiking tomorrow in the mountains. We hope to 
a video with our phones! Hope you're enjoying your vacation, too.

Bye for now,
Lara

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following elements:

### "How do I spend my free time?"

| Tiew do repend my rice inner                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ideas to help you: sports - arts and crafts - picnic | - camping - hiking                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                      | The state of the s |

# ARCHECL

Lesson

# -Lesson 2 (I like going to the beach



# Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



free time

وقت فراغ



going to the beach

الذهاب للشاطئ



reading a book

قراءة كتاب



having ice cream

تناول الآيس كريم



staying home

البقاء في المنزل



watching a movie

مشاهدة فيلم



hiking in the mountains التنزه مشيًا في الجبل



adventure

مغامرة

# كلمات إضافية تعلمات إضافية

| computer games | ألعاب الكمبيوتر | grandparents | أجداد          |
|----------------|-----------------|--------------|----------------|
| burger         | برجر            | cousins      | أولاد عم - خال |
| onions         | بصل             | the same age | نفس العمر      |
| For example    | علم سبيل المثال | job          | وظيفة          |

Connect Plus 5 \( \tag{13}\)

| <b>Activity</b> | Rook |
|-----------------|------|
| Activity        | DUUK |

| language  | لغة                 | snack         | وجبة خفيفة |
|-----------|---------------------|---------------|------------|
| emails    | رسائل بريد الكتروني | shopping      | تسوُّق     |
| newspaper | جريدة               | at the market | في السوق   |

# Conjugation of Verbs

# Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

|       | Present |          | Past    | PP      |
|-------|---------|----------|---------|---------|
| enjoy |         | یستمتع ب | enjoyed | enjoyed |
| wait  |         | ينتظر    | waited  | waited  |
| paint |         | يرسم     | painted | painted |
| dance |         | يرقص     | danced  | danced  |
| hate  |         | یکرَه    | hated   | hated   |

# lrregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

|       | Present            | Past  | PP      |
|-------|--------------------|-------|---------|
| drink | يشرب               | drank | drunk   |
| do    | يفعل               | did   | done    |
| write | يكتب               | wrote | written |
| have  | يملك - عنده - لديه | had   | had     |
| sit   | يجلس               | sat   | sat     |
| take  | يأخذ               | took  | taken   |
| run   | تخرت               | ran   | run     |
| draw  | يرسم               | drew  | drawn   |
| grow  | يزرع - ينمو        | grew  | grown   |

# Amira's Blog

### ට්ලකු වීමුක



I'm Amira and I love having free time because I can do my favorite things. For example, my family and I enjoy spending time outside. My mom, dad, and I love going hiking in the mountains and the desert. We like going to the beach, too. I love going swimming, but my mom doesn't like swimming and always reads a book at the beach. Sometimes my mom and I record a video at the beach to send to my grandparents.



They love seeing our adventures. We sometimes have a picnic together at the beach, too.

My brother is different. He hates going to the beach so he doesn't usually come with us. And he doesn't like going camping with us. He's 22 and he has a job, but he enjoys staying home and reading a book or watching a movie.

# Younis's Blog

### സ്രൂട് ത്രിയാ



I'm Younis and I love spending my free time with my cousins. I'm ten, my cousin Maged is nine, and his brother Waleed is 11. We enjoy doing a lot of different things together because we're almost the same age. For example, we love playing computer games on



Saturday. We also like having dinner together. My

parents usually take us to have a burger. I have mine with everything on it, but my cousins don't have any onions - they hate eating onions on their burgers. Sometimes my aunt and uncle take us to have ice cream. I love eating ice cream, but I don't like putting chocolate on my ice cream. My cousins love putting chocolate on theirs!

Connect Plus 5 🗕 💮 💮 💮 💮 💮 💮 💮 15

### **Grammar Study**

### like - love - enjoy - hate

- ☐ After verbs (like love enjoy hate like ... etc) we can add a
  (verb + -ing).
  - الله like love enjoy hate) سواءً في حالة الإثبات أو النفي تُتبع بـ الخط أن الأفعال (verb + -ing):
  - ▶ We like going to the beach.
    ▶ I love having free time.
  - ▶ I enjoy spending time outside. ▶ They hate eating onions on their burgers.
  - ► He doesn't like going camping. ► I don't enjoy playing video games.
- ☐ If a verb ends in a consonant + e, take away the e and add -ing:
  - ▶ We like having dinner together.
- ☐ For verbs that end in a vowel then a consonant, write the last letter twice and add -ing:
  - ▶ I don't like putting chocolate on my ice cream.

### **Exercises on Lesson** (2)



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

🤇 enjoys – watching – hates – reading – don't like 🕽

My brother Ramy is different form me. He • going to the beach so he doesn't usually come with us. And he doesn't like going camping with us. He's 22 and he has a job, but he staying home and • a book or • a movie.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

mountains - hiking - spending - picnic - beach

Fayza: Do you love having free time, Amira?

Amira: Yes. I love having free time because I can do my favorite things.

Fayza: Like what?
Amira: For example, my family and I enjoy time outside.
Fayza: What do you do outside?
Amira: My mom, dad, and I love going hiking in the and the desert.
Fayza: Do you do any other activities outside?
Amira: Yes. We like going to the too. I love going swimming, but my mom doesn't like swimming and always reads a book at the beach. We sometimes have a together at the beach, too.

# 3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. I'm Amira and I love (has have having had) free time.
- 2. They enjoy (spend spends spent spending) time outside.
- 3. He loves (gone go went going) hiking in the mountains and the desert.
- 4. Mom doesn't like (swimming swims swam swim).
- **5.** He enjoys (stay stayed staying stays) home and reading a book or watching a movie.
- 6. She doesn't like (go going goes gone) camping with us.
- 7. They enjoy (do does done doing) a lot of different things together.
- 8. We don't like (has having had have) dinner outside.
- 9. They hate (eating ate eaten eat) onions on their burgers.
- Younis loves (to spending spend spending spends) his free time with his cousins.
- **11.** I don't like (put puts putting to putting) chocolate on my ice cream.
- **12.** He hates (going go goes to going) to the beach so he doesn't usually come with us.

# Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. like favorite things doing I my.
- 2. spending enjoy my family time with I.
- .....
- 3. camping We in love desert the.

Connect Plus 5

4. brother - enjoys - My - staying - older - home.

......

5. age - almost - are - We - the - same.

•

6. father - to dinner - in weekends - takes - Our - us.

.

7. my ice cream - don't - put - I - chocolate - on.

.....

8. watching - adventures - they - Do - like - our?

9. you - onions - Do - your burger - like - on?

?

10. likes - Mona - sports - school - playing - after

Read and match "A" with "B":

'A' 'B'

- **1.** I love playing **a)** ful medames for breakfast.
- 2. I don't like drinking b) in the sea on vacation.
- 3. At home, we enjoy having c) emails on my phone.
- 4. Talia and Lama like doing d) video games with my friends.
- 5. We love swimming e) arts and crafts after school.
- **6.** I hate writing **f)** tea or coffee.
- 6 Complete the sentences with the (verb + -ing) form:

1. My dad loves ..... (read) in his free time.

2. Talia likes (play) sports after school.

3. Hany hates ...... (do) arts and crafts.

4. I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ (put) up a tent.

ARCHIEL Lessons 3-4

Lessons 3-4 What do you like doing in your free time?

Do you like reading poems?



# Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



قصیدهٔ poem



verses أبيات القصيدة ,



rhyme



**creative** مبدع - مبتکِر



interview (v) يستضيف في مقابلة



classmate زمیل فی الفصل ,



قافىة

desserts تحلية (الحلو بعد الأكل)



recipes سهات طهرو



countryside الريف



section



survey استطلاع رأي



**result** نتیجة ً ,

| Extra Vocabulary | كلمات إضافية |
|------------------|--------------|
|                  |              |

جزء

| dishes                  | أكلات                  | heart      | قلب             |
|-------------------------|------------------------|------------|-----------------|
| different meals         | وجبات مختلفة           | lt's mine. | إنها مِلكي.     |
| difference              | اختلاف                 | read aloud | يقرأ بصوتٍ عالٍ |
| never been before       | لم يذهب إليها من قبر   | bees       | نحل             |
| After-School Activities | أنشطة ما بعد المدرسة 🗧 | take turns | يتناوب الأدوار  |

Connect Plus 5 - 19

# **Activity Book**

| nature  | الطبيعة   | models      | نماذج    |
|---------|-----------|-------------|----------|
| knee    | رُكبة     | airplane    | طائرة    |
| fishing | صيد السمك | on vacation | في إجازة |

# Conjugation of Verbs

# Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

|           | Present |             | Past        | PP          |
|-----------|---------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| cook      |         | يطهي        | cooked      | cooked      |
| listen to |         | يستمع إلى   | listened to | listened to |
| paint     |         | يرسم        | painted     | painted     |
| want      |         | یرید        | wanted      | wanted      |
| talk      |         | يتحدث       | talked      | talked      |
| look      |         | ينظر        | looked      | looked      |
| travel    |         | يسافر       | traveled    | traveled    |
| hug       |         | يحضن        | hugged      | hugged      |
| love      |         | يحب         | loved       | loved       |
| practice  |         | يمارس       | practiced   | practiced   |
| share     | ىارك    | یشارك - یتش | shared      | shared      |

# الأفعال غير المنتظمة Irregular verbs

| Pı         | resent         | Past       | PP          |
|------------|----------------|------------|-------------|
| hear       | يسمع           | heard      | heard       |
| read       | يقرأ           | read       | read        |
| find       | يجد            | found      | found       |
| see        | یری            | saw        | seen        |
| take turns | يتناوب الأدوار | took turns | taken turns |
| run        | يجري           | ran        | run         |

Lessons 3-4

### Tip!

- You can answer the survey questions with short answers:
  - (√) Yes, I do.
- ► (X) No, I don't.
- You can add really to your answers to make them sound stronger.
  - ▶ I really love playing tennis.
  - I really enjoy watching movies.



### Read and learn

# We can all have a hobby

Amir loves traveling He wants to do more. He loves going places He's never been before.

Fares is creative And makes lots of art. He paints and he draws He shows us his heart.

And Noha loves nature She hugs great big trees. She goes hiking and camping And talks to the bees.

And then we have Tarek Who's such a great cook. He loves making dishes He finds in a book.

There are so many things To do with our time. We can all find a hobby and then say, "It's mine!"

# Apoem









### **Grammar Study**

### (Adjectives) Comparison المقارنة

### Remember:

### Comparative degree:

- ◆ We use the comparative form to compare two people, two animals or two things.
  - ◄ تستخدم الدرجة الثانية من المقارنة (الصفات) لنقارن بين شخص وشخص أو حيوان وحيوان
     أو شمء وشمء ...... وهكذا.
  - ▶ I'm younger than my sister.
  - ▶ The lion is stronger than the wolf.
- ◆ We add (er) to the short adjective and use the word (than) after it.
  - ♦ نضيف للصفة القصيرة (er) ونضع بعدها كلمة (than مِن
  - ► Football is more popular than handball.
  - ► Handball is less popular than football.
- ♦ We use (more) or (less) before long adjectives and the word (than) after them.
  - ◆ إذا كانت الصفة طويلة ، نضع قبلها إما (less) أو (more) وبعدها (than).

### Superlative degree:

- ◆ We use the superlative form to compare more than two people, animals or things.
  - ◄ تستخدم الدرجة الثالثة من المقارنة (الصفات) للمقارنة بين شخص ومجموعة من الاشخاص أو حيوان ومجموعة من الحيوانات أو شيء ومجموعة من الأشياء .... وهكذا.
  - ▶ The lion is the strongest animal.
- → We add (est) to the short adjective and use the word (the) before it.
  - ♦ نضيف للصفة القصيرة (est) ونضع قبلها كلمة (the).
  - ► Football is the most popular sport.
  - ▶ This is the least expensive shirt I have.
- → We use (the most) or (the least) before long adjectives.
  - ♦ إذا كانت الصفة طويلة نضع قبلها إما (the least) أو (the least).

### Lessons 3-4

# Exercises on Lessons (3) (4)

# 1 Read the poem again and choose a or b:

- 1. Where does Amir like going?
  - a) to new places

- b) to places he knows
- 2. What can we see in Fares's pictures?
  - a) things he likes doing
- b) how he feels
- 3. Why does Noha hug trees?
  - a) she loves them

- b) she doesn't like them
- 4. Where does Noha like going?
  - a) to places in cities

- b) to places in the countryside
- 5. What does Tarek like to cook?
  - a) cakes and desserts
- b) different meals
- 6. How does Tarek know what to cook?
  - a) he uses recipes in a book
- b) he looks online
- 7. What can we do in our free time?
  - a lot of things

- b) only one thing
- 8. Who can find a hobby?
  - a) we all can

b) people who like traveling

# 2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. She is (old older the oldest) than her brother.
- 2. The orange tree is (smaller than the smallest smallest) the mango tree.
- 3. Ehab is the (fast faster fastest) boy in the class.
- **4.** That's the (more less most) expensive dress in the shop.
- 5. The white car is (the most more the least) expensive than the black car.
- 6. My grandpa is (the than then) oldest one in the family.
- 7. Who is (tall taller the tallest) than Gamal?
- 8. Who is (tall taller the tallest) one in the family?
- 9. Which story in the library is (more exciting less exciting the most exciting)?
- 10. Swimming is (less more the least) popular activity.
- Playing football is (the most more the least) popular than doing creative hobbies.
- 12. Which hobby is (more relaxing the least relaxing less relaxing)?
- 13. Cooking is (the least less more) popular activity.

- **14.** Listening to music is (the most less the least) popular than playing computer games.
- **15.** Which sport is (the most dangerous the least dangerous more dangerous) than rock climbing?
- 16. Football is the (most more less) exciting sport.
- 17. Judo is (the most the least less) exciting than boxing.
- **18.** Which car is (less expensive the least expensive the most expensive) than Fiat?
- **19.** For me, watching a match is (the most interesting less interesting the least interesting) than watching a film.
- **20.** PE class is (most interesting more interesting the most interesting) one. We enjoy it a lot.
- **21.** I think drawing is (difficult more more difficult the least difficult) than reading.
- **22.** Playing sports is (exciting the most exciting more exciting) than watching it.

# 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. sports - doing - What - like - you - do?

2. popular - most - the - activity - Swimming - is.

3. the - Cooking - popular - least - is - activity.

4. read - you - do - poems - When?

5. and - drawing - He - painting - likes.

6. making - loves - dishes - He - delicious.

7. hiking - She - and - camping - goes.

8. really - watching - He - movies - enjoys.

Lessons 3-4

| form of the verb:                                                                                                                  | s. Use Do or Does and the -ing         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <ol> <li>Noha / love / record / videos</li> <li>Does Noha love recording videos?</li> <li>you / enjoy / draw / pictures</li> </ol> | No, she doesn't.                       |
| 3. Youssef / like / run                                                                                                            | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·  |
| 4. you / hate / make/ models                                                                                                       |                                        |
| 5. your friends / like / read / magazines                                                                                          | ······································ |
| 6. Reem / enjoy / swim                                                                                                             | ······································ |
| Read and complete the dialogue w                                                                                                   | rith the words from the box:           |
| (less – more – the lea                                                                                                             | st – the most                          |
| <b>1.</b> Tarek thinks that skiing is doesn't like fishing.                                                                        | exciting than fishing. He              |
| <ol> <li>Swimming is popul</li> <li>Cars are expensive</li> </ol>                                                                  | •                                      |
| <ul><li>4. Painting is relaxing</li><li>5. My friends don't like running. It's dar</li><li>6. Watching TV is dar</li></ul>         |                                        |
| 6 Do a class survey about the studer                                                                                               | nt's favorite hobbies and sports:      |
| Interview your classmates, ask them a sports and write down their answers.                                                         | about their favorite hobbies and       |
|                                                                                                                                    |                                        |

Connect Plus 5



# Activity Book

| drum   | طبلة  | crocodiles | تماسیح الماسیح |
|--------|-------|------------|----------------|
| guitar | جيتار | hippo      | غرس النهر      |

# **Conjugation of Verbs**

### Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

| The state of | Present           | Past         | PP           |
|--------------|-------------------|--------------|--------------|
| box          | يلاكم             | boxed        | boxed        |
| help         | يساعد             | helped       | helped       |
| finish       | ينتهب من          | finished     | finished     |
| visit        | يزور              | visited      | visited      |
| look after   | تعيين ن           | looked after | looked after |
| live         | يعيش              | lived        | lived        |
| arrive       | يصِل              | arrived      | arrived      |
| wrestle      | يصارع - يتقاتل مع | wrestled     | wrestled     |

### الأفعال غير المنتظمة Irregular verbs

|      | Present            | you dear | Past | PP   |
|------|--------------------|----------|------|------|
| say  | AND AND ASSESSMENT | يقول     | said | said |
| tell |                    | يخبر     | told | told |
| sing |                    | يغني     | sang | sung |

### Read and learn

# هابي يقوم برحلة إلى المدينة Hapi takes a trip to the city

Hapi lived in Ancient Egypt. He lived with his parents on a farm near the Nile. Every day, he helped his father look after his animals. After work, he and his sister Amunet helped his mother in the house.



Connect Plus 5 -

27



### Hapi takes a trip to the city

هابي يقوم برحلة إلى المدينة

When they finished the housework, they sometimes played a board game o called senet. It was a very popular game o in Ancient Egypt.

One day o, his father said, "I'm going to the city today. Hapi, now you're ten years old, you can come with me. Your sister can help your mother today."



It was a long way to the city, but Hapi was excited.

"I've never been to the city before," he said. "What's it like, Dad?"

"It's not the same as the country," he said. "You'll soon see!"

When they arrived in the city, Hapi saw many people and buildings. He saw two boys playing a game on the ground, but it wasn't senet.

"Hello! What are you playing?" Hapi asked them.

"Hi. This is mehen, the snake game 6," the older boy said

"It looks fun. What other things do people in the city do in their free time?" Hapi asked them.

The younger boy said, "We play a lot of sports. Sometimes we watch a chariot race o! The Pharaoh o and his family like chariot races. They like archery o and hunting o, too," he said.

"I like boxing o!" said the older boy. "Do you want to wrestle or box o?"

"No, thank you," said Hapi. "I live in the country. I love swimming. My father and I take our boats on the river, and we enjoy fishing , too."

"That sounds fun ," said the younger boy. "Perhaps we can visit you one day."

On the way home , Hapi's dad said, "Did you like the city?"

"Yes!" said Hapi. "People don't do the same free-time activities as us, but they are nice.

🛭 لعبة لوحية

😉 لعبة مشهورة

ذات يوملعبة الثعبان

🕝 سباق عربات دربية

ضرعونالرماية

و ميد الحيوانات

© صيد الحيواناد © الملاكمة

© تصارع

® تلاکم

ا ميد السمك

🗓 يبدو هذا ممتعًا

😉 في الطريق للبيت

→ Step Aheo

28

# The Lesson Notes

exciting - excited:

- ◄ هاتان الكلمتان تم ورودهما في الوحدة
- مثار فرحان- متحمس (adj) excited مثار
- If an adjective ends in (-ed), it describes how a person feels.
  ♦ الصفة المنتهية بـ (ed) تصف كيف يشعر الشخص (في الغالب تستخدم لوصف عاقل).
  - ► Hapi was excited on his way to the city.
  - مثير (adj) عثير
- ◆ If an adjective ends in (-ing), it describes the thing that makes the person feel like that.
  - ◄ الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) تصف الشيء الذي جعل الشخص يشعر بهذا (في الغالب تستخدم لوصف غير العاقل).
  - ▶ The city is really exciting.
- → نفس الأمر ينطبق على الصفات:

(tired - tiring - interested - interesting - surprised - surprising - amazed - amazing ......)

# Exercises on Lesson (5



1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

wrestling - hobby - race - boats - Pharach

Hapi: Hello! What are you playing?

Boy: Hi. This is mehen, the snake game.

Hapi: It looks fun. What other things do people do in their free time?

Boy: We play a lot of sports. Sometimes we watch a chariot \_\_\_\_\_!

The \_\_\_\_\_ and his family like chariot races. They like archery and hunting, too.

Hapi: What sports do you like?

Boy: I like boxing and ......! Do you want to wrestle or box?

Hapi: No, thank you. I live in the country. I love swimming. My father and I take our \_\_\_\_\_ on the river, and we enjoy fishing, too.

Connect Plus 5 -

29

# Read the following text and answer the questions:

Hapi lived in Ancient Egypt. He lived with his parents on a farm near the Nile. Every day, he helped his father look after his animals. After work, he and his sister Amunet helped his mother in the house. When they finished the housework, they sometimes played a board game called senet. It was a very popular game in Ancient Egypt.

# A Choose the correct answer: 1. Hapi lived on a (town – city – village). 2. Hapi helped his father look after his (fields – animals – crops). 3. When did Hapi live? 4. How did Hapi spend his free time? Read the story again and answer the questions: 1. What game did Hapi and his family sometimes play?

- 2. Why was Hapi excited?
- 3. What were the two boys doing in the city?
- 4. What sports and hobbies did Hapi hear about?
- 5. Did Hapi do the same sports and hobbies in the country? Why?

**>** ------

6. What did he learn about life in the city?

(1)

# Number the events from the story in the correct order:

- Hapi saw many people and buildings.
- b. Hapi heard about the sports that the Pharaohs liked.
- c. Hapi helped his father on the farm.
- d. Hapi went home with his father.
- e. Hapi told the boys about fishing on the river.
- f. A boy told Hapi about the snake game.
- The older boy asked Hapi to wrestle or box.
- h. Hapi traveled to the city with his father.

# Read the text and circle T (True) or F (False). Correct the false ones:

Children in Ancient Egypt did lots of things in their free time. They enjoyed singing and dancing. They played musical instruments like the drums and the guitar. Children had lots of different toys to play with, too. They liked playing with balls, dolls, and toy animals. And they loved playing board games. The most popular board games were senet and mehen. Mehen was also called the snake game. Children loved swimming, too and they often swam in the Nile. But it was dangerous! There were crocodiles and hippos in lots of places in the Nile!

- Children in Ancient Egypt enjoyed playing music. T/F
- They liked music, but they didn't have any toys. TIF
- 3. The most popular board games were senet and mehen. T/F
- 4. Children never swam in the Nile. T/F
- 5. Swimming in the Nile was dangerous because there were T/F hippos and crocodiles.

Connect Plus 5 +

# Lesson 6 Writing an email to a friend

# Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



photography يصوير فوتوغرافي



birdwatching مشاهدة الطيور



natural environment بیئة طبیعیة



tour guide مُرشد سیاحی



**gorgeous** فاتن - جمیل



**surfing** , رياضة ركوب الأمواج



knitting حیاکة (کروشیه)



**baking** ذَبز (الخبيز)

|              | ra Vocabulary          | لمات إضافية    | ۷ ک      |
|--------------|------------------------|----------------|----------|
| email        | رسالة بريد إلكتروني    | informal       | یر رسمی  |
| writer       | كاتب الرادا الأفال 184 | awesome        | دهش ۱۳۷۳ |
| introduction | مقدمة                  | cool           | ئع       |
| closing      | خاتمة                  | South of Egypt | نوب مصر  |

| <b>Activity Book</b> | My budget that bus     |            |                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------|------------------------|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| email friend         | صديق البريد الإلكتروني | wonderful  | رثع المعارضة |
| taking photos        | التقاط الصور           | Siwa Oasis | واحة سيوة                                                                                                       |
| volleyball           | الكرة الطائرة          | wildlife   | <sup>دیاة</sup> البریة                                                                                          |

32

- Step Ahea

# **Conjugation of Verbs**

# الأفعال المنتظمة Regular verbs

| Present |              | Past      | PP        |  |
|---------|--------------|-----------|-----------|--|
| explain | يشرح         | explained | explained |  |
| define  | يُعرِّف      | defined   | defined   |  |
| include | يشمل - يتضمن | included  | included  |  |
| plan    | يخطط         | planned   | planned   |  |

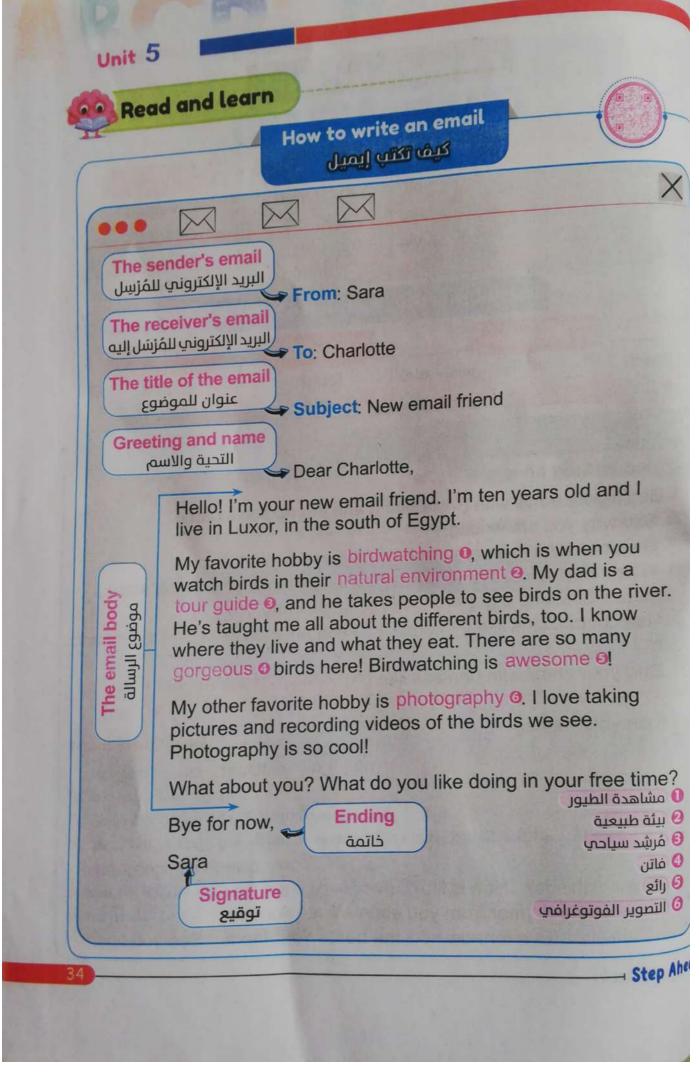
# الأفعال غير المنتظمة Irregular verbs

| P     | resent           | Past   | PP     |
|-------|------------------|--------|--------|
| teach | يُعلِم - يُدَرِس | taught | taught |
| eat   | يأكل             | ate    | eaten  |

### Tip!

- When writing an email
  - 1. Begin your email with (Dear or Hi) and the person's name.
  - Say why you are writing.
  - Give one idea in a paragraph and expand on it.
  - 4. When writing to a friend, use adjectives to make your email sound more interesting e.g. (awesome, gorgeous and cool).
  - 5. Use contractions like (I'm and He's) and phrases like (How's life? and How are things?)
  - 6. End your email with phrases like (Write soon, Hope to hear from you soon, See you soon, All the best, Your friend, or Bye for now) and عند كتابة الإيميل then your name.
    - 1. ابدأ إيميلك بـ (Dear Hi) ثم اسم الشخص.
      - 2. اذكر سبب كتابة الإيميل.
    - 3. قدم فكرة واحدة في كل فقرة ثم قم بتفصيل الفكرة.
    - 4. عندما تكتُب لصديق يمكنك استخدام صفات لكي تجعل إيميلك أكثر تشويقًا مثل .(cool - awesome - gorgeous)
    - ل (How are things? How is life?) وعبارات مثل (How are things? How is life?).
      - Hope to hear from you soon Write soon) انهِ إيميلك بعبارات مثل. Bye for now - All the best - Your friend - See you soon)، ثم اسمك.

Connect Plus 5 -



# Exercises on Lesson 6 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

environment – gorgeous – birdwatching – guide – hobby Hello! My name is Sara. My favorite hobby is 0, which is when you watch birds in their natural 2 . My dad is a tour 6 , and he takes people to see birds on the river. He's taught me all about the different birds, too. I know where they live and what they eat. There are so many o birds here!

- Read the email and answer the questions:
  - 1. Who is the email to? Who is it from?
  - 2. Where does the writer live?
  - 3. What is her favorite hobby?
  - 4. What's the job of the writer's father?
  - 5. What did her father teach her?
  - 6. What's the writer's other favorite hobby?
- Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
- 1. new friend I'm email your.
- 2. ten I old am years. ......
- 3. birdwatching favorite My is hobby.
- 4. natural We birds watch environment in their.

Connect Plus 5 ⊢

- 5. dad me birds My taught all about.
- 6. There many birds gorgeous so are.
- 7. hobby photography favorite is My.
- 8. My is guide tour a dad.
- Read the email and answer the questions:









From: Ramy

To: Jamie

Subject: New email friend

Hi Jamie,

Hello. I'm your new email friend. I'm ten years old and I live in Alexandria, in Egypt. Have you ever been to Egypt? It's a really interesting, beautiful country.

What are your hobbies? My favorite hobby is wildlife photography. Wildlife photography is when you take pictures of animals, birds, and plants in nature. There are lots of wonderful animals in Egypt. I really love taking photos of them and learning about them. I have about 300 wildlife photos. My favorite animals are fennec foxes. They're gorgeous.

I love hiking, too. The Siwa Oasis is an awesome place to see wildlife. I often go hiking with my parents and my older brother Sherif. He's 18.

What do you like doing in your free time?

Write soon!

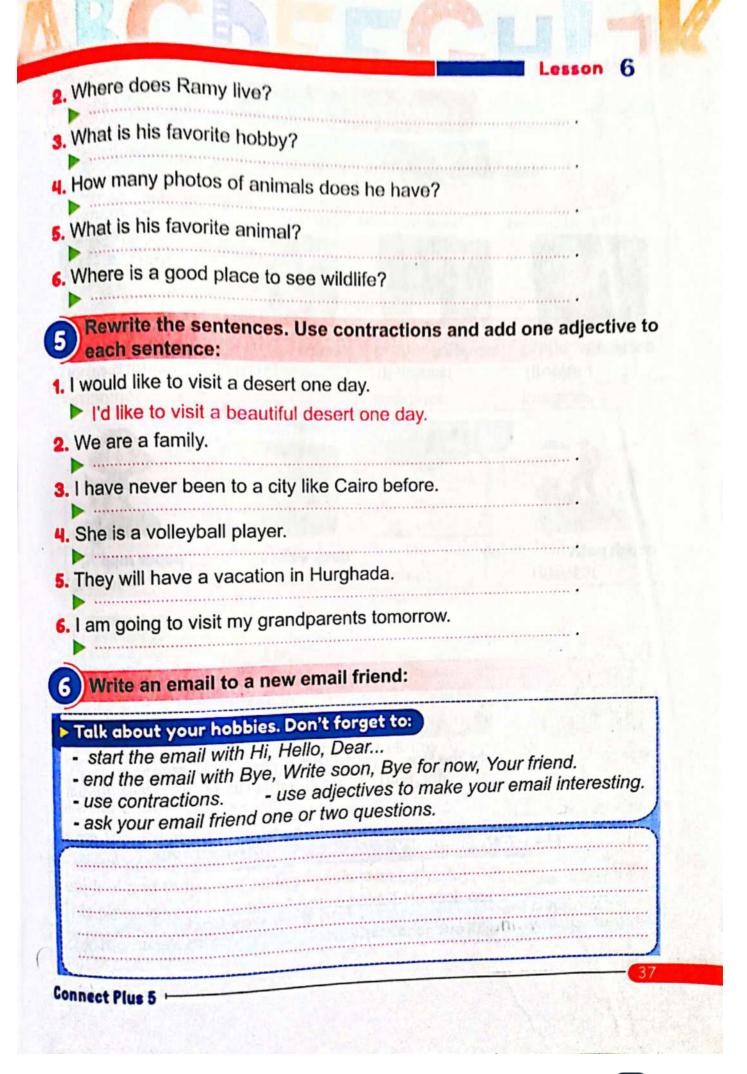
Bye for now,

Ramy

1. Who is Ramy writing to?

36

Step Ahe





# **Conjugation of Verbs**

# Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

| Preser                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | nt l           | Past       | AND THE PERSON NAMED IN |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|------------|-------------------------|
| remember                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | يتذكر          |            | PP                      |
| work                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                | remembered | remembered              |
| smell                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | يعمل           | worked     | worked                  |
| AND DESCRIPTION OF THE PARTY OF | مشي            | smelled    | smelled                 |
| start                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | يبدأ           | started    | started                 |
| decide                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | يقرر           | decided    | decided                 |
| prepare                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | يُعدِّ - يُجهز |            |                         |
| drop                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                | prepared   | prepared                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | يُسقِط         | dropped    | dropped                 |
| imagine                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | يتخيل          | imagined   | imagined                |

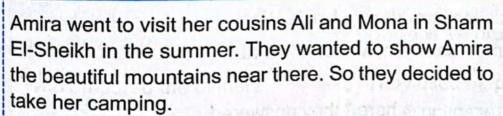
#### Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH | Present       | Past  | PP     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-------|--------|
| put                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | يضع           | put   | put    |
| drive                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | يقود مركبة    | drove | driven |
| light                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | یشعل نار- ضوء | lit   | lit    |
| sleep                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | ينام          | slept | slept  |



#### **Amira goes camping**

أميرة تذهب للتخييم



Uncle Wael drove to the start of the trail 0, which is a rough path o across the desert. "The air smelled beautiful and they went hiking 6 into a deep valley 6. "This place is very beautiful, " Amira said. She took out her phone, recorded a video, and dropped a pin on the حددت موقع على الخريطة) map 6.



- 🕦 بداية الدرب
- 👩 طريق وعر
- 😝 ذهبوا للتنزه سيرًا
  - 🗿 وادي عميق

Connect Plus 5

#### Amira goes camping

أميرة تذهب للتخييم

They finally arrived at the first campsite . Uncle

Wael took the tent out of his backpack of . "Who can remember how to put it up?" he asked.

"I can!" said Ali.

"Who is going to make the campfire o?

"I can!" answered Mona.

"And I can cook," said Aunt Mariam.

But after 30 minutes, they found that Ali could not remember how to put up the tent, and Mona could not light the fire •. So they did not eat and they could not sleep in the tent.





The next day, they used the maps on their phones to find the next campsite. When they got there, Aunt Mariam said, "Let's all work together today. First, we can put up the tent. Then, we can help to light the fire. Finally, you can all help me to cook dinner!"

They put up their tent quickly by working together. Then they started the fire. Next, they all worked together to prepare dinner. Amira washed the vegetables, Mona cut them, and Aunt Mariam cooked. Ali prepared the picnic table. They went to bed early. They were not tired or hungry. The next morning, they had breakfast and put on their backpacks.

"Oh, no! My phone doesn't work!" said Uncle Wael.

"My phone is the same!" said Aunt Mariam. "What about your phones, children?"

"We don't have any reception @ here," they answered.

"What can we do now?" Aunt Mariam asked.

"How can we find the car?"

10000

🛈 تشعل النار

🔞 قام بإخراج الخيمة

و حقيبة الظهر

🛈 نار المخيم

🕲 استقبال إشارة محمول

📵 مكتب السياحة

"I have a paper map. I got it from the tourist office ®," said Uncle Wael. "We can read the map together and find our way back to the car."

Step Aheo

## Exercises on Lesson (7)



Complete the sentences using the words in the box:

pin – campsite – picnic table – trail – reception – campfire

- 1. Uncle Wael drove to the start of the which is a rough path.
- 2. Amira took out her phone, recorded a video, and dropped a ...... on a map.
- 3. Amira put some food on the
- 4. I can't use my phone. We don't have any here.
- 5. I have some wood. Who is going to make the ?
- 6. We put up our tent and stayed two nights at a
- Read the story again and match the questions with the answers:

#### 'A'

- 1. Where did Amira go camping with her uncle and aunt?
- 2. How did they get to the trail in the mountains?
- Where did they stay on the first night?
- 4. How did they find the campsite the next night?
- 5. Who prepared the dinner?
- How did they find the car on the last day?

- a) At a campsite
- b) They used a paper map.
- c) They all did.
- d) Uncle Wael drove them.
- e) They used maps on their phones.

B'

- f) They went to the mountains.
- Read the story again and choose the correct answers, a or b:
- 1. What did they all take with them when they went hiking?
  - a) phones

b) books

Connect Plus 5

| Unit 5                                | sking on the first day?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |   |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|
| 2. Where did they go                  | niking on the first day?  b) a deep valley                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |   |
| beautiful oasis                       | the tent at the first campsite?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |   |
| <ol><li>Who tried to put up</li></ol> | b) Amira                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |   |
|                                       | The state of the s |   |
| 4. Who tried to make                  | he campfire at the first campsite?  b) Mona                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |   |
| d) Uncle Wael                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |   |
| 5. Who prepared dinne                 | er at the second campsite?  dinner.  b) Aunt Mariam and Amira                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |   |
| a) They all prepared                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |   |
| 6. What happened the                  | n't work.  b) They couldn't find their phones                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |   |
| Their phones did                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |   |
|                                       | d answer the questions:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |   |
| 1. How does Amira de                  | scribe the mountains?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |   |
| 2. Why did Amira drop                 | a pin on the map on her phone?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |   |
|                                       | ry to do on the first night?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |   |
| 4. What was different                 | ***************************************                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |   |
|                                       | ***************************************                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |   |
| 5. Why couldn't they u                | se their phones to find the car?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |   |
| 6. Do you think they w                | ill find their way to the car? How?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |   |
| <u> </u>                              | •••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |   |
| Write a paragraph                     | of (50) words using the following elements:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |   |
| <b>/</b>                              | "A trip to a village"  trip - family - village - fields - trees - crops -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |   |
| Ideas to help you:                    | animals - milk - meat - games - fresh air - enjo                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | y |
| 7                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | - |
|                                       | Total Series                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |   |
|                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 1 |
|                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 1 |
|                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 7 |
| 42                                    | Step                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | h |

## Unit 5 Test 1



Listen and Choose the correct answer:

My name is Emily. There are a lot of different ways that people spend their free time here in Canada. When it's warm out, people have a picnic in the park. We have a lot of green spaces in my city, but the only problem is that it rains a lot. So, when it's raining, I go swimming. The pool is indoors.

- When it's warm out, people have a (match competition game picnic) in the park.
- 2. Emily has a lot of green (trees grass spaces plants) in her city.
- The only problem in Emily's town is that it (rains snows blows flashes) a lot.
- 4. Emily swims in the (sea pool river lake).
- 2 Listen and answer the questions:



(2Ms)

they went hiking into a deep valley.

Amira went to visit her cousins Ali and Mona in Sharm El-Sheikh in the summer. They wanted to show Amira the beautiful mountains near there. So they decided to take her camping. Uncle Wael drove to the start of the trail, which is a rough path across the desert. The air smelled beautiful and trail, which is a rough path across the desert. The air smelled beautiful and

- 1. Where did Ali and Mona live?
- 2. What did Amira's cousins want to show her?

ملحوظة هامة: عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع ثم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص.

الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

Connect Plus 5

Unit 1

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

making - age - games - spending - enjoy

I'm Younis and I love my free time with my cousins. I'm ten my cousin Maged is nine, and his brother Waleed is 11. We

doing a lot of different things together because we're almost the same . For example, we love playing computer

on Saturday. We also like having dinner together.

Read the following text and then answer the questions below:

People have different hobbies. Sports, computers, the interent, drawing reading and collecting stamps are very famous hobbies, but television is the most common hobby. People watch television or listen to the radio to know what is happening all over the world. They know about accidents, sports and important things. They also listen to or watch interesting programmes. Many of them like football matches, others like science programmes.

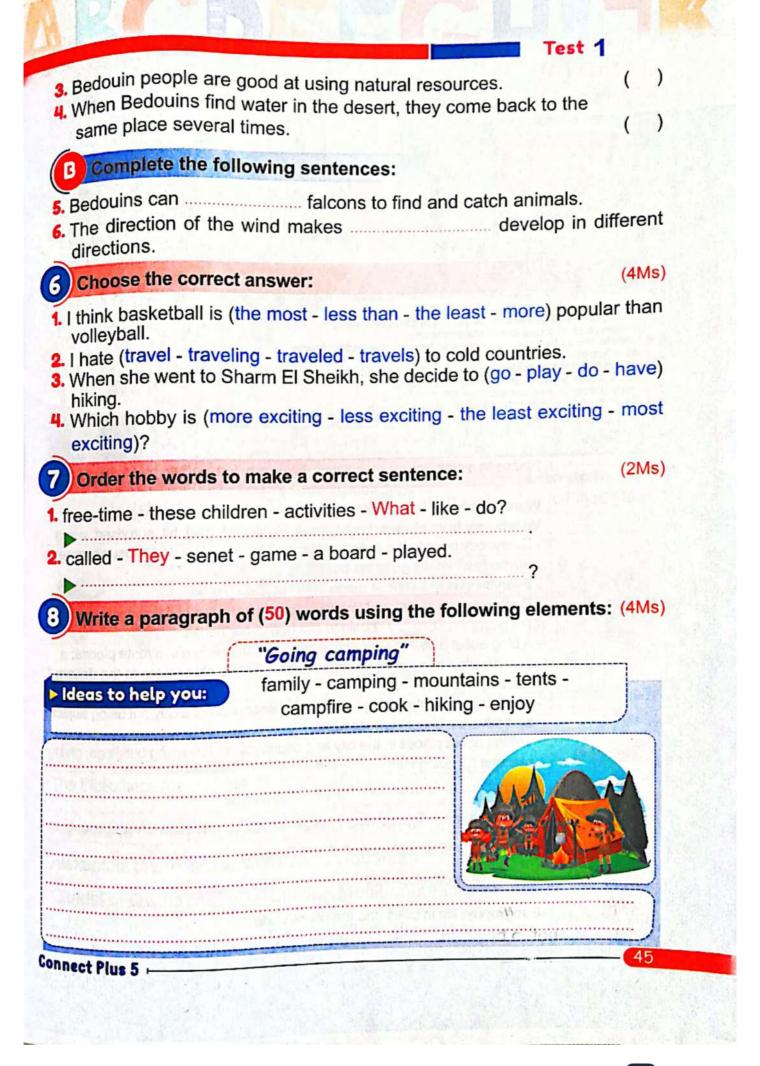
- A Choose the correct answer:
  - 1. Most people like (collecting stamps reading watching TV drawing
  - 2. People like (one four six different) hobbies.
- B Answer these questions:
  - 3. What hobbies mentioned in the passage?
  - 4. Why do people listen to the news?

The Reader

The Bedouin Tribes of the Desert

- 5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):
  - 1. The Bedouin way of life is the same as it has always been.
  - 2. It is too hot to be in the desert in winter.

Step Ahr



Theme (3) My society



مدينتي الرائعة





In this unit I will ....

- understand and use words for places in cities and villages. understand and use indefinite pronouns.
- listen to and understand descriptions of famous cities and landmarks.
- do a famous buildings quiz.
- find out about a new shopping mall and use the infinitive of purpose. understand a story about living near water. write a description for a competition entry. understand a story called The Railway Children.

#### **Objectives**

| THE RESERVE AND PERSONS ASSESSED. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Vocabulary                        | Places in a city: aquarium, artifacts, bike path, fort, harbor, planetarium, rui straight, tram, university  Words related to the countryside: bucket, bush, curved, date palms  Vocabulary from stories: bright, fossil, frightened, glad, hit, surprised, wave                                                                        |
| Language                          | <ul> <li>Everybody goes to the sports center on Thursday. We don't - usually mee anybody when we go to the beach.</li> <li>Everything in this shop is made from recycled plastic.</li> <li>Designers use plants and fountains to help keep the building cool.</li> <li>I'm going to phone my cousin to ask him to our house.</li> </ul> |
| Reading                           | <ul> <li>A blog about a visit to Alexandria; blogs about children's favorite places; a<br/>conversation about a new shopping mall; a story about a trip to the deser<br/>Railway Children</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                    |
| Writing                           | <ul> <li>Descriptions of interesting buildings; a description of a day out using adje<br/>and adverbs; checking your work</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Speaking                          | <ul> <li>Talking about places in the city and countryside; describing buildings; givi<br/>reasons for doing things</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Listening                         | Descriptions of famous buildings; a dialog                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Life skills                       | Critical thinking: appreciating the differences between the city and country                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

Values

- Tolerance and acceptance of others Respect

Issues and challenges

- Sustainable development

Integrated crosscurriculum topics

Geography: life in cities and the countryside





#### Lesson Present PP **Past** see CH saw seen think يفكر- يعتقد thought thought show shown showed يعرض

Vocabulary Study

|             | vocabatary Study                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| planetarium | : A building in which images of stars, planets, and constellations are projected on the inner surface of a dome for public entertainment or education. |
| aquarium    | : A place where you can see fish, sharks, and other sea animals.                                                                                       |
| harbor      | : A place where boats stop and stay.                                                                                                                   |
| university  | : A place where students can study after they finish school.                                                                                           |

### Did you know?

هل تعلم؟

There are about 102 million people in Egypt. Over 7 million people live in Cairo and over 3.5 million people live in Alexandria.

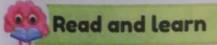
يوجد حوالي 102 مليون شخص في مصر. أكثر من 7 مليون شخص يعيشون في يعيشون في القاهرة وأكثر من 3,5 مليون شخص يعيشون في الإسكندرية.



#### Did you know?

هل تعلم؟

More than half of the people on Earth live in a city. أكثر من نصف سكان الكرة الأرضية يعيشون في المدن.



#### My city visit

by Nesma, aged 9

Last week I went to Alexandria with my family. I live in a small village between Alexandria and Cairo, so it was exciting to visit a big city. These were some of my favorite places.



Connect Plus 5 +

#### My city visit

## by Nesma, aged 9



#### The harbor

Alexandria has a very important harbor 1. It's the oldest and biggest in Egypt. We went on a boat trip 2 from the harbor at sunset 6. It was



beautiful because we could see the city and all the boats on the sea. We visited the Citadel of Qaitbay 0, too. This is a very old fort 5 that people used to protect the city.

#### The Bibliotheca Alexandrina

This library is a famous modern building near the harbor in Alexandria. The round building is beautiful and different to anything I've seen before. It has over 4 million books! There are also museums and a planetarium of where we saw an amazing display about stars and planets.

#### **Alexandria University**

When we were in Alexandria, we visited my cousin. She's at university there and she's studying science. She showed us where she studied. The university buildings are very big - a lot bigger than my school! There are lots of students and I think it would be a great city to study in.

#### The aquarium

I really liked seeing the colorful fish and sea animals in the aquarium 9. isn't very big, but there are lots of different things to see there. I learned lot about fish in the Mediterranean Sea • and the Red Sea, as well as fis which live in the Nile.

#### Roman amphitheater

We visited the ruins of the ancient Roman amphitheater in the city. A long time ago, people used it for musical shows, meetings, and plays. It was interesting to visit somewhere so old!

It was fun to be in Alexandria, because there are lots of things to see and do. Over 3.5 million people live here so there's a lot of traffic . There are bike paths in some parts of the city and you can rent bikes to travel around, but we traveled by tram. It was easy and cheap and we saw lots of different places. I can't wait to visit the city again soon!

رحلة بالقارب

عند وقت الغروب

قلعة قايتباي

حصن قدیم جدًا

معرض القبة السماوية

عرض الحامعة

متحف الأحياء البحرية

البحر الأبيض المتوسط

آثار

المدرج الروماني القديم

زحام شدید

50

- Step Ah



## Exercises on Lesson (1)



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

Citadel – visit – fort – harbor – trip

biggest in Egypt. We went on a boat 9 from the harbor at sunset. It was beautiful because we could see the city and all the boats on the sea. We visited the 6 of Qaitbay, too. It is a very old that people used to protect the city.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box:

## fort - planetarium - Library - books - harbor

Do you know the Bibliotheca Alexandrina? Hagar:

Nesma: Of course. It's very famous. It's the ...... of Alexandria

Did you visit it before? Hagar:

Nesma: Yes, I visited it last week.

Where is it? Hagar:

Nesma: It's near the ..... in Alexandria.

Do you know how many ..... there are? Hagar:

Nesma: Yes. The library has over 4 million books. Are there any thing else in the building?

Hagar: Nesma: Yes. There are also museums and a

where we saw an amazing display about stars and planets.

# Read the following text and answer the questions:

My name is Nesma. I'm nine years old. When we were in Alexandria last week, we visited my cousin. She's at university there and she's studying science. She showed us where she studied. The university buildings are very big - a lot bigger than my school! There are lots of students and I think it would be a great city to study in.

Connect Plus 5 ⊢

| ľ  | A Choose the correct answer:                                                                                                                  |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | <ol> <li>Nesma is in (primary school – prep school – university).</li> <li>The university buildings are very (small – big – tiny).</li> </ol> |
|    | Answer these questions:                                                                                                                       |
|    | 3. When did Nesma visit Alexandria?                                                                                                           |
|    | 4. What did Nesma's cousin study?                                                                                                             |
| L  | Read and match the children with the places they want                                                                                         |
|    | aquarium - harbor - library - market - univers                                                                                                |
| 1. | Munir is interested in different fish and sea animals                                                                                         |
| 2  | Adam loves shopping.                                                                                                                          |
| 3  | Nada and Amira want to go on a boat trip.                                                                                                     |
| 4  | Mazen loves reading.                                                                                                                          |
| 5  | Eman is studying history in a summer course.                                                                                                  |
| 5  | Read the text again and answer the questions:                                                                                                 |
| 1. | Where does Nesma live?                                                                                                                        |
|    | When did they go on a boat trip?                                                                                                              |
|    | What is inside the Bibliotheca Alexandrina?                                                                                                   |
|    | What did they see in the planetarium?                                                                                                         |
|    | What did Nesma learn about in the aquarium?                                                                                                   |
|    | What did people use the amphitheater for?                                                                                                     |
|    | How did Nesma and her family travel around Alexandria?                                                                                        |

# Road the text again and choose the correct answers, a or b:

- 1. Which city did Nesma visit last week?
  - a) Port Said

- Alexandria
- 2. What is special about the harbor?
  - a) It's the oldest and biggest harbor in Egypt.
  - b) It was some of the biggest boats in Egypt.
- 3. What famous modern building is near the harbor?
  - d) the university

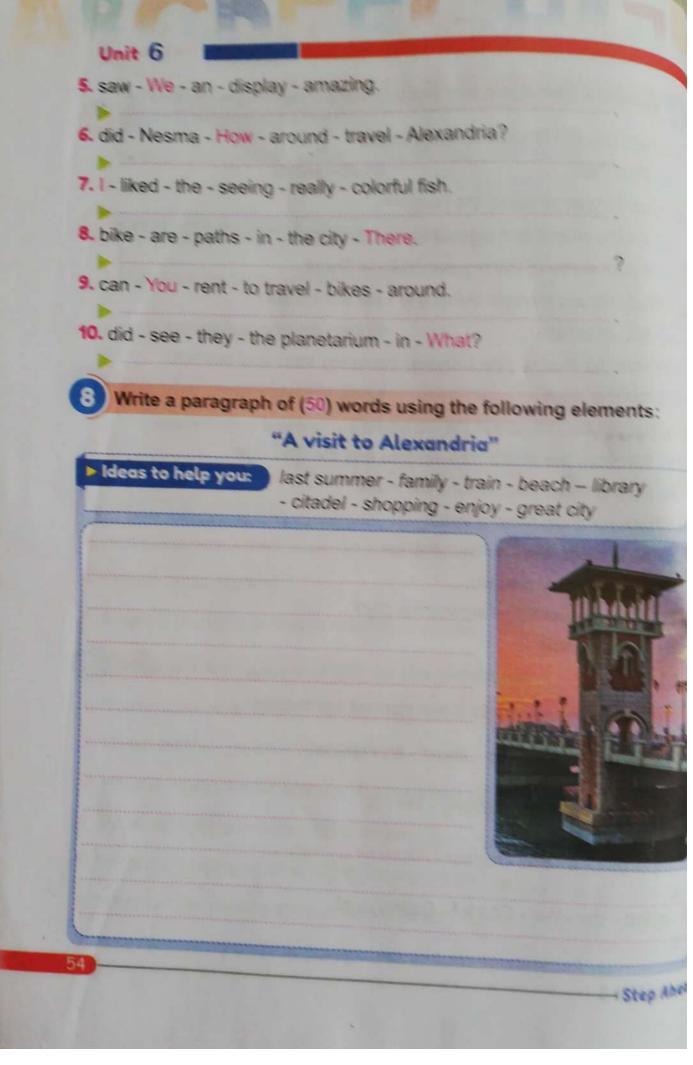
- b) the Bibliotheca Alexandria
- 4. Where did Nesma see a display about the stars and planets?
  - d) the museum

- b) the planetarium
- 5. What did Nesma see in the aquarium?
  - a) fish from the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea
  - b) fishing boats from around the world
- 6. Which ruins did Nesma visit?
  - a) an ancient Roman Amphitheater
  - b) the Citadel of Qaitbay
- 7. How did nesma travel around the city?
  - a) on bike paths
  - b) by tram

## Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. know What you do about Alexandria?
- 2 city was to visit exciting the It. **>** ......
- 3. important a has harbor Alexandria very. **>** .....
- 4. visited the We Citadel Qaitbay of. .....

Connect Plus 5 -



# --Lesson 2 Language



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



Khan El-Khalili حي خان الخليلي



favorite place مکان مفضل



sports center مرکز ریاضی



café سقم - مقمر



<mark>bakery</mark> مخبز



recycled plastic بلاستیك معاد تدویره



famous person شخص مشهور



have fun پستمتع



quiet هادئ





difficult معبة ,



shopping تسوّق

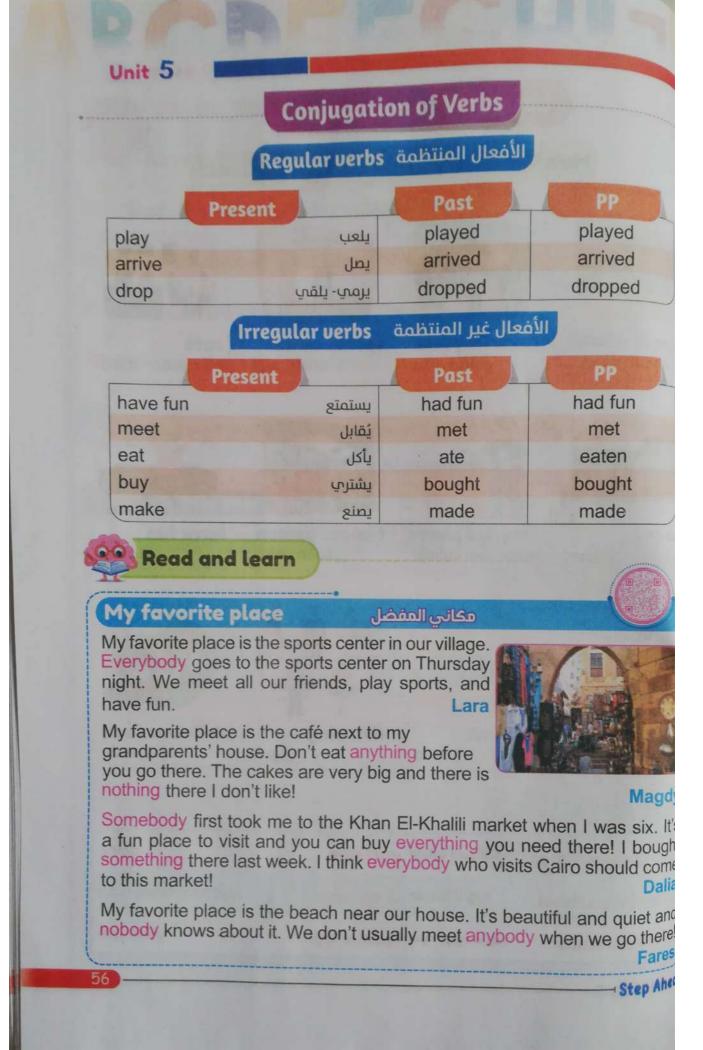


delicious food طعام لذیذ

### **Activity Book**

| summer vacation  | الإجازة الصيفية | garbage     | قمامة                |
|------------------|-----------------|-------------|----------------------|
| secondary school | مدرسة ثانوية    | drop litter | يلقي قمامة على الأرض |
| Sinai Peninsula  | شبه جزيرة سيناء | local shop  | متجر مُحلي           |

Connect Plus 5



#### Unit 5

- nobody nothing
- We use nothing and nobody to talk about no / many things or people in general, in the positive sentences.

#### 🍐 يستخدم في الجمل المثبيّة (Positive).

I found nobody there to help me.
There is nothing there I don't like

## لاحظ الاتي: :Note the following

- I don't have anything to do today.
  I have nothing to do today.
- ► There isn't anything in the box.
  = ► There is nothing in the box.

#### 🧆 لاحظ أن كل التعبيرات السابقة تُعامَل معاملة المفرد.

- There is something wrong with this television set.
- Nobody knows what's going to happen.
- Somebody wants to see you, dad.
- Everybody here is welcomed.
- Is there anything I can do?

## Exercises on Lesson

## 1 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. I'm hungry. Is there (anything everything nothing) to eat?
- There is (everything somebody nobody) at the door. I think it is you friend.
- Hana is really funny and (nobody anybody everybody) likes her.
- 4. That test was very difficult. Did (somebody anybody nobody) do we in it?
- (Everything Everybody Anything) in this shop is made from recyclet plastic.
- 6. There is (nothing everything something) on the table for you. It's if present from your grandpa!

Step Ahead

5A

- 7. I know (anybody anyone somebody) in secondary school.
- 8. I always eat (something everything everybody) for breakfast.
- 9. There isn't (something anything nothing) in my school bag.
- (Somebody Everybody Nobody) helps me with my homework. I do it with no help.
- 11. (Nobody Everybody Anybody) in my family loves summer vacation. It's fun.
- 12. There was (nothing anything everything) interesting on TV last night.
- 13. I didn't know (nobody somebody anybody) on my first day at school.
- 14. I love (something everything anything) about my town.
- 15. Somebody (am is are) at the door. Can anybody open the door?
- 2 Complete the dialog with these words. Then listen and check:

## anybody - anything - everybody - everything - something

Aya: Look at this new bakery, Mom. Is there 0 ...... you want, Injy?

Injy: Yes, there is, and there isn't o \_\_\_\_\_ inside. Can we quickly buy some cakes before people arrive, Mom?

Mom: No! I bought 6 ..... we need in the market this morning.

Aya: But o says the cakes are really good here!

Mom: Not today, girls, but I'll buy you 6 \_\_\_\_\_ next time we're out shopping.

Read and match "A" with "B":

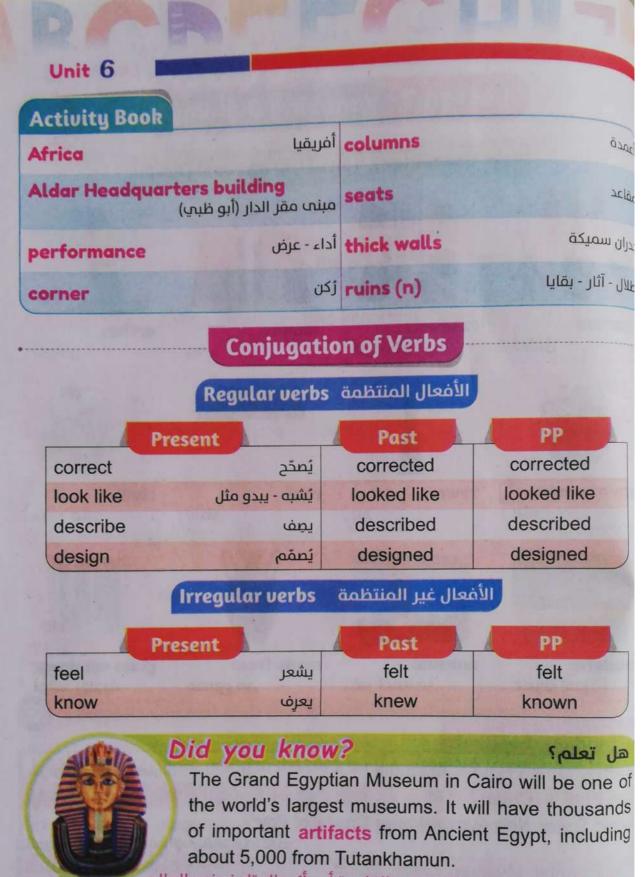
| 'A'             | <b>'B'</b>                                    |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 1. We use no    | a) in positive sentences.                     |
| 2. We use some  | b) in negative sentences and questions.       |
| 3. We use any   | c) to talk about all of the people or things. |
| 4. We use every | d) when there isn't a person or thing.        |

Connect Plus 5 +

## Unit 5

| Reorder the words to make correct sentences.                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. is something - of this fort - There - about the - color - special.                                                                                                                                                              |
| 2. building - tall - in - this - is old - Nothing.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 3. at - learns - Everybody - about - the planetarium - the stars.                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 4. Everything - museum - is - at - and important - the - old.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 5. your - What's - place - favorite?                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 6. favorite - My - is - the - place - sports center.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 7. are - cakes - These - big - very.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 8. is - This - a fun - to - visit - place.                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 9. house - My - near - is - beach - the.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 10. is - There - somebody - the - at - door.                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 5 Complete the text with the correct indefinite pronoun:                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Hi, I'm Nesma. I love going to the park on the weekend. I meet my friends there, and we play games. It's a beautiful place, and • everything in the park is clean. • leaves garbage or drops litter There's always • to see or do. |
| o in my family loves the park, too. Sometimes my mon                                                                                                                                                                               |
| and I play with my little sister Dalia, and my dad plays football with my                                                                                                                                                          |
| brother Waleed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 60 Step Ahe                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |





سيكون المتحف المصري الكبير في القاهرة أحد أكبر المتاحف في العالم. وسيكون فيه آلاف القطع الأثرية الهامة من مصر القديمة، منها حوالي 5 آلاف قطعة لتوت عنخ آمون.

Step Ahe

## The Citadel of Qaitbay



قلمة قايتباي

🕡 مربع

2 حوائط سميكة

Lesson 3

و حجارة

🕡 ابراج مستديرة

😉 الزوايا

6 جمینمستقیم

و زجاج

בבעב

🐠 حدیث - عصری

اعمدة 🕮

ی مبنی غیر نمطی

۵ مقاعدمسرحیات

🍪 أثر

ن تماثیل

It's a big square • with very thick walls •. Almost everything is made of stone •, and there are tall round towers • in the corners • of the building.

It's a fort 6, and it was built to protect the city. Nobody could go in it when the doors were closed!

### The Al Dar Headquarters



مقر الدار

Nothing is straight in this building! It is made of glass in and steel in this building! It is made of glass in and steel in this building! It is made of glass in the area of glass in the straight in this building! It is made of glass in the glass

columns . It's an unusual building .

#### The Roman amphitheater in Alexandria



It's a big building made of stone. There are seats where everybody used to sit and watch plays . There are some tall columns. It's a ruin , but it's a beautiful building.

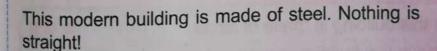


#### The Leaning Tower of Pisa, Italy

برجييزاالمائل،إيطاليا

This building has lots of arches. There's something unusual about this tower!

## The Guggenheim Museum, Bilbao, Spain السيانيا The Guggenheim Museum, Bilbao, Spain





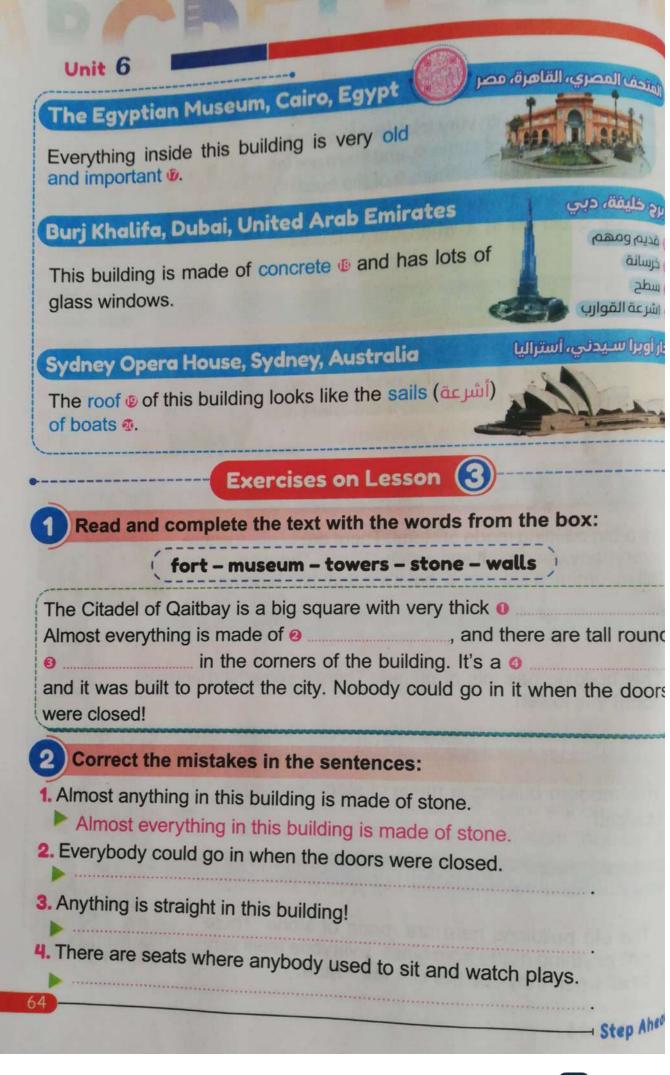
#### Karnak Temple, Luxor, Egypt

معيد الكرنك، الأقصر، مصر

The old buildings here are made of stone. There isn't anything made from glass. Everyone feels very small when they see the statues the here.



Connect Plus 5



| Reorder the v                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | vords to make correct sentences:                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| an - see - you -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | in - the photo - What?                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Total Control of the | 7                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| · comment                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | ots of - has - windows - glass.                                                                                                                                                                       |
| This - has - build                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | ding - lots - arches - of.                                                                                                                                                                            |
| designed - He -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | the building - a boat - to look - like.                                                                                                                                                               |
| s - This - buildin                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | g - modern - made of - steel.                                                                                                                                                                         |
| tower - This - is                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | - unusual.                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Complete the                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | text with the words from the box:                                                                                                                                                                     |
| beautiful - le                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | arning - the most - to build - to learn - will be                                                                                                                                                     |
| out the past and                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | world love going to museums  to see interesting artifacts. The Grand Egyptian Museum one of  important museums in the world                                                                           |
| Giza ochitects have use aliding for Egypt's Write an email your notebool                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | to see interesting artifacts. The Grand Egyptian Museum one of important museums in the world ed steel and glass important Egyptian artifacts.  I to a friend who is visiting your city or village in |



# Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Presen |       | Past  | PP    |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|
| find   | يجِد  | found | found |
| build  | تبنت  | built | built |
| grow   | يزرع  | grew  | grown |
| keep . | يحافظ | kept  | kept  |

|          | المول التجاري Indeping mall                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Grandma  | :Do you like my new house, Nagwa?                                                                                                                      | مول تجاري                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Nagwa    | :Yes, but it's very big! I can't find Dad.                                                                                                             | The state of the s |
| Grandma  | :He's in the living room!                                                                                                                              | مهندسین<br>معماریین                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Nagwa    | :Oh, yes! What are you doing, Dad?                                                                                                                     | يقرروا                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Dad      | :I'm looking at these designs for the new shopping                                                                                                     | خطط                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| pardent. | mall <b>0</b> . I'm meeting the architects <b>2</b> to decide on <b>5</b> the plans <b>3</b> tomorrow.                                                 | مفتوح                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Nagwa    | :That sounds exciting. What will be in the mall?                                                                                                       | فوق السطح                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Dad      | :There'll be stores selling everything - clothes                                                                                                       | دار سینما                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Dau      | stores, shoe stores, and things for the home.                                                                                                          | نافورة                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Nagwa    | :Great, I love shopping! Can I go there to buy                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Dad      | :You can when it's open o! It will take about a year                                                                                                   | to build.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Nagwa    | :That's a long time. Will there be anything for my fr                                                                                                  | ienas to c                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Dad      | :Yes, there'll also be lots of cafés with tables and cha                                                                                               | airs outsid                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Nagwa    | The Warriage Will it he too hot, though?                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Dad      | :No, we're planting lots of plants there to keep ped                                                                                                   | ווג, נטט.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Nagwa    | :Yes, lots of new buildings have plants growing in the roof. People make rooftop gardens to get not the roof. People make anything else for my friends | nore natu                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Dad      | :Yes, there's a movie theater of there, and a big to                                                                                                   | dittairi •                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Nagwa    | sit next to. I can't wait to see it, Dad! Everybody will love it.                                                                                      | · bionog                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

#### Unit 6

# Grammar Study

# to لكي + infinitive

# (المصدر) stem verb (المصدر)

- We use (to) to express purpose and to answer the questions beginning يُستخدم للتعبير عن الغرض وأيضًا نستخدمها للإجابة على السؤال البادئ بـ (Why): with (why):
  - ▶ Why do you go to school? To learn.
  - ▶ I go to bed early to get up early.
  - ▶ She bought a piece of cloth to make a new dress.

# Exercises on Lesson (4)



Complete the sentences with words from the box:

# to ask - to buy - to help - to make - to meet - to watch

- 1. Builders use steel and glass ...... buildings look modern.
- 2. I like going to movie theaters new movies.
- 3. People go to shopping malls \_\_\_\_\_ new clothes or \_\_\_\_ friend
- 4. Designers use plants and fountains keep the building co
- 5. I'm going to phone my cousin him to come to our house
- Read and match "A" with "B":

'B'

- 1. I'm meeting the architects
- 2. Can I go there
- 3. We're planting lots of plants there
- People make rooftop gardens
- a) to get more nature into our cities.
- b) to keep people cool.
- c) to decide on the plans tomorrow.
- d) to buy some new clothes?
- Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:
- 1. Who is Dad meeting tomorrow?

Step Ahed

- 2. What stores will be in the mall?
- 3. When will the new mall open?
- 4. What other things will be in the mall?
- Read the text. Circle T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences:

Hi Talia. I've got some great news! We will soon have a new shopping mall in our city and I'm very excited! We need a new shopping mall. The shopping mall will have something for everybody! There'll be different stores where you can buy everything you want. We can meet there to go shopping. There'll be restaurants and cafés, too. So, it'll be a fun place to eat I hope my mom and dad take us there to have lunch. And there'll also be a movie theater. I can't wait to go.

It'll be a great place to meet friends. Would you like to meet me there?
It'll be a nice place to visit because there's going to be an amazing rooftop garden! There will be lots of trees and plants inside. The plants will make it cool, so I think lots of people will want to go there to sit and relax. I think it will be beautiful, too. I can't wait for the new shopping mall to open!

| ( will be beautiful, too. I can't wait for the new shopping man to sperin                                   |           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1. There will soon be a new swimming pool in the city.  There will soon be a new shopping mall in the city. | T/F       |
| 2. The mall will have lots of different stores.                                                             | T/ F      |
| 3. There won't be any places where people can go to have something to                                       | eat. T/ F |
| 4. Some people will go there to watch a movie.                                                              | T/ F      |
| 5. There will be trees and plants inside.                                                                   | T/ F      |
| 6. The mall will be hot inside.                                                                             | T/ F      |
| 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in t                                            | he box:   |

ge - have - look - make - meet - sit

- 1. People will visit the shopping mall \_\_\_\_\_ to go \_\_\_\_ shopping.
- 2. Rania wants to go to the mall .......her friend.

Connect Plus 5

#### Unit 6 3. We'll go to the restaurant some food. 4. Mom goes to the cafe and relax. 5. They've planted lots of trees and plants \_\_\_\_\_ the building cool People will go up to the rooftop garden at the view. Read and match "A" with "B": 'A' B' In the future, architects will design learn about the past. houses to 2. We visited the ancient ruins to protect the city of Alexandria. Builders use stone, glass, and be cool in hot temperatures. steel to 4. People should plant more trees in d) see the harbor and the cities to Bibliotheca Alexandrina. The Citadel of Qaitbay was built to e) make modern buildings. We're visiting Alexandria to f) keep the streets cool. Reorder the words to make correct sentences: 1. you - Do - like - new - my - house? 2. am - I - looking - the - at - designs. 3. I - Can - buy - new - some - clothes? 4. are - Plants - for - good - environment - the. People - make - to - gardens - rooftop - love. 6. is - Who - Dad - tomorrow - meeting? .....? 7. will - When - the - mall - new - open? 8. going - I'm - to - my - phone - cousin. 9. do - Why - people - the - go - beach - to? 10. My - malls - mom - shopping - loves. Step Aheod

#### Lesson

# Lesson 5 A visit to the desert



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



desert





lake بحیرة ,



o**asis** رواحة



fossils محفریات



date palms نخیل البلح



sand dunes کثبان رملیة



bushes شجیرات /



path مسار - طریق



curved منحنِی



straight lines خطوط مستقیمة



wh**ale** حوت

كلمات اضافية

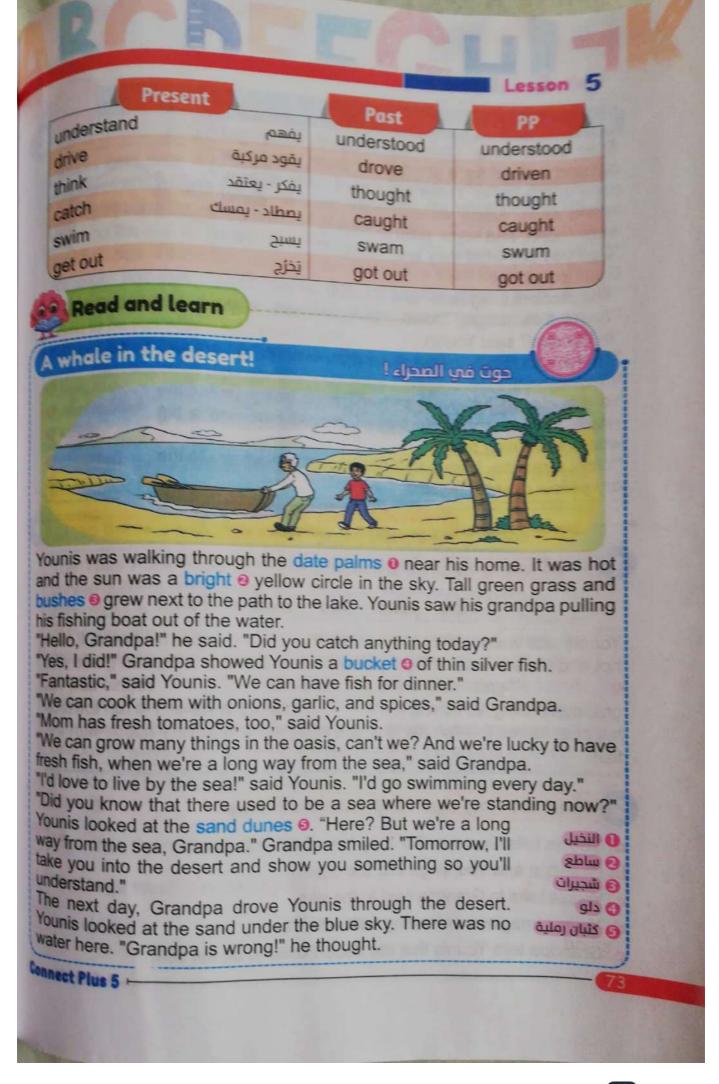


bucket دٍلو - جردل إ

|             | Extra Vocabulary                 | A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR | The second second second |
|-------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| round       | gدائري                           | arlic management                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | اثوم ،                   |
| bright      | و لامع - ساطع                    | nions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | بصل                      |
| fantastic   | ،<br><mark>5</mark> رائع - خيالي | pices                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | بهارات                   |
| green grass | <b>أ</b> غشب أخضر                | resh tomatoes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | طماطم طازجة              |
| eil         |                                  | முற்ற பிறு fishing boat                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                          |

Connect Plus 5 +





### A whale in the desert!

حوت في الصحراء!

After some time, Grandpa stopped. They got out and walked for a short time. Soon, they saw strange shapes 6. There were hard white shapes in the sand. Some were straight lines 6, some were round, and some were curved 8.

and James and

"Can you see what they are, Younis?"

Grandpa asked.

"They look like big fish!" said Younis.

"You're almost right. These are whale fossils 9. Where do whales live?"

"In the sea!" said Younis.

"That's right. Forty million years ago, everything here was sea.

Imagine that!"

Younis closed his eyes and imagined being under the water. He thought about fish all around him, and a big whale swimming past.

🔞 منحنیق

"Wow, Grandpa. I never thought I would see whales in the dry yellow desert!" he said.

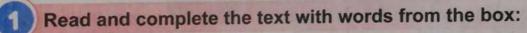
🥹 حفریات حوت

أشكال غريبة

🕜 خطوط مستقيمة

### Exercises on Lesson (5





### lake - palms - boat - bushes - fish

Younis was walking through the date • near his home. It was hot and the sun was a bright yellow circle in the sky. Tall green grass and grew next to the path to the • . Younis saw his grandpa pulling his fishing • out of the water. He ran towards his boat to see the fish his grandpa caught. He was very happy with the fish.

### Read the story again and order the events:

- a. Younis tells Grandpa that they have fresh tomatoes.
- b. Grandpa and Younis go into the desert.
- c. Younis talks to Grandpa next to the lake.
- d. Younis imagines swimming with whales.
- e. Grandpa tells Younis that the desert used to be the sea.

- Step Aheo

# 3 Read the story again circle the correct words:

Younis lived near (a park – an oasis) in Fayoum. He was walking through the cool date palms near his home one day when he saw his grandpa pulling his fishing boat out of the (lake – harbor). It was a hot day and the sun in the sky was (bright – brown). Grandpa showed him a bucket of fresh fish. Grandpa wanted to cook them for dinner with tomatoes and garlic. Younis looked at the clear blue water in the lake. "I'd love to live by the sea," he said. Grandpa told Younis that there used to be sea where the oasis is now.

"Tomorrow, I'll take you (to the coast – into the desert) and I'll show you," said Grandpa. The next day, they drove through the hot dry desert past tall sand dunes. When they got out of the car, Younis saw some (large white – small black) shapes. They looked like rocks. They were huge ancient (shells – whale fossils). (Forty million – Four million) years ago, this area was the sea and that's why these objects are still there.

# Read the text and answer the questions: Activity Book

The Wadi Hitan Fossil and Climate Change Museum is a beautiful curved building in the desert near Fayoum. The museum looks like the large rocks in the desert. The museum was built in Wadi Hitan because of the amazing whale fossils that people found in the desert. Inside the museum is the largest complete whale fossil in the world. It is 37 million years old and 18 meters long. There are shark and crocodile fossils here, too. People come here to find out about a big change in the area. This area used to be the sea. Whales and sharks used to swim here millions of years ago, but now the water is gone, the area is a desert.

| millions of years ago, but now the water is   | gone, the area is a second |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| millions of years ago, part                   | seil and Climate Change    |
| 1. What kind of building is the Wadi Hitan Fo | SSII and Cimiate           |
| Museum?                                       |                            |
| 2 IAN Look like?                              | ¥                          |
| What does the museum look like?               |                            |
|                                               |                            |
| What huge fossil is in the museum?            |                            |
|                                               | The second section is      |
| How old is it?                                | . Tr                       |
| ***************************************       |                            |
| Connection                                    |                            |
| Connect Plus 5                                |                            |
|                                               |                            |

#### Unit 6

- 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
  - 1. sun The was bright the sky in.
  - 2. grass green Tall grew the lake next to.
- 3. Grandpa the water his pulled fishing boat out of.
- 4. We have can dinner for fish.
- 5. can grow We things many the oasis in.
- 6. love to live the by sea I'd.
- 7. looked Younis at sand the dunes.
- 8. Younis drove through Grandpa desert the.
- 9. imagined being Younis under water the.
- 10. What see do in you the desert?
- 6 Read the story again and answer the questions:
- 1. What are Younis and his grandfather having for dinner?
- 2. What plants can you find in the story?
- 3. What does Grandpa say the oasis used to be?
- 4. Why does Younis think Grandpa is wrong?
- 5. What do they see in the desert?

10

- Step Ahel

# Lesson 6 Writing a description



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس









description وصف

school competition , مسابقة مدرسية

prizes ر جوائز

on vacation في غطلة



Ras Muhammed National Park محمية رأس محمد



sea plants نباتات البحر



snorkeling الغوص قريبًا من إسطح الماء



snorkel أنبوبة التنفس للغطس



masks أقنعة



boat trip رحلة بالقارب



felt sick إ شعر بالتعب



competition entry , اشتراك في مسابقة

| Extra | Vocabulary   |
|-------|--------------|
|       | rà ibi fnáls |

حديقة وطنية - محمية طبيعية national park ماء داف

كلمات إضافية

around us أسماك ملونة زاهية around us

خولنا

photos

features صور

خصائص - سمات

mistakes رُكبة

Connect Plus 5 -

#### Unit 6

| Activity Boo | k                       |              |               |
|--------------|-------------------------|--------------|---------------|
| fruit        |                         | old truck    | النه قديمة    |
| yogurt       | زبادي                   | figs         |               |
| honey        | عسل                     | Sayadeya     | قياسمك صيادية |
| dessert      | تحلية - الحلو بعد الأكل | fishing boat | א מדכ         |

### **Conjugation of Verbs**

### Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

|         | Present  |          | Past     | PP       |
|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| enjoy   | Thomas . | یستمتع ب | enjoyed  | enjoyed  |
| breathe |          | يتنفس    | breathed | breathed |
| try     | 4414     | يحاول    | tried    | tried    |

#### Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| No. of the Control of | resent | Past | PP   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|------|------|
| feel                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | يشعر   | felt | felt |
| wear                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | يرتدي  | wore | worn |
| see                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | ניט    | saw  | seen |

### **School Competition**

#### مسائوو محرستو

We went to Sharm El-Sheikh on vacation 0. It was a lot of fun! On the last day, we got a boat to visit Ras Muhammed National Park 2. I liked the boat trip, but my little brother Adam felt sick.

He had to sit on Mom's knee! When we got to the national park, we tried snorkeling **6**. It was amazing! الغوص قريبًا من سطح الماء We wore masks o over our faces and used a snorkel o

0 في إجازة

و أقنعة

و خرطوم التنفس

Step Ahed

# School Competition

We loved swimming in the clear warm water. We saw bright colorful fish swimming quickly around us, and some beautiful tall sea plants, too. Amira, aged 11



### How to make a description:

كيف تُقَدِم وصفًا

When you write a description, think about what you saw, what you did, and how you felt. Always use adjectives, adverbs and exclamation points to make your writing more interesting. Using a photo or a picture is very important. When you have finished, check your work carefully. Can you improve anything?

عندما تُقَدِم وصفًا، فكر في الذي رأيته، وما قمت به، وما كان شعورك حينئذ. لكي تجعل كتابتك أكثر تشويفًا وامتاعًا؛ استخدم دائمًا صفات لتصف بها الأسماء وظروف لتصف بها الأفعال وأيضًا علامات تعجب. استخدامك لصورة عن الموضوع الذي تتحدث عنه مهم جدًا. عندما تنتهي، راجع كل ما كتبت بعناية. هل بإمكانك تعديل أو تحسين أب مما كتيته؟

#### Exercises on Lesson (6



Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box:

### description - National Park - bright - vacation - snorkeling

Manal: Hi Amira. Where were you last month?

Amira: Hi Manal. We went to Sharm El-Sheikh on

Manal: Did you enjoy your time there?

Amira: Oh, yes. It was a lot of fun!

Manal: Did you visit Ras Muhammed

Amira: Of course. On the last day, we got a boat to visit Ras

Muhammed National Park.

Manal: Did you try

Amira: Yes. It was amazing! We wore masks over our faces and used a

snorkel to breathe under water.

Manal: What did you see under water?

Amira: We saw colorful fish swimming quickly around

us, and some beautiful tall sea plants, too! Connect Plus 5 -

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hi! My name is Talia. It was the first day of my vacation. I felt so happy a Hi! My name is Talia. It was the first day of the harbor in Hurghada and to the harbor in Hurghada and to excited! Everybody got up early and was a Hurghada and looked for breakfast. Then we walked to the harbor in An old truck. He was tor breakfast. Then we walked to the han in an old truck. He was sell the pretty blue fishing boats. I saw a man in an old truck. He was sell the pretty blue fishing boats. the pretty blue fishing boats. I saw a fine that, we quickly walked to ice to the men in the fishing boats. After that, we quickly walked to ice to the men in the fishing boats. The fish market because it was getting late. Mom wanted to buy some fre

It was a colorful market and people were talking loudly. It was very exciting! We bought four big gray fish and some fresh figs. I really to figs! They're my favorite fruit. Then we went back to Grandma's hou where we were staying. In the evening, I helped Mom make Sayade for dinner with the fish from the market. And then we had figs and cream for dessert. It's my favorite! It was a great day!

- 1. Why did Talia feel excited and happy?
- 2. What did they look at in the harbor?
- 3. What were the people at the market doing?
- ...... 4. What food did they buy at the market?
- 5. What did Talia do in the evening?
- 6. What kind of day did Talia have?
- Rewrite these sentences correctly. Check adverbs, adjectives and punctuation to find one mistake in each sentence:
- Tareks mom gave him a new red shirt.
  - Tarek's mom gave him a new red shirt.
- 2. I quick ran home after school.
- ...... 3. It was really amazing?

| torium in a him have                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Lesson 6                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The planetarium is a big building                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Amira and Laila walked home slow.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | *                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| We saw bright colorful fish swimming quick around us.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Reorder the words to make correct sentences:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 1. in - did - the water - What - they - see?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | ?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 2. masks - We - our - wore - faces - over.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | is in the contract of the cont |
| 3. beautiful - tall - sea - We - plants - saw.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 5 Read again and answer the questions:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Where did Amira go on vacation?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 410                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 2. What do you think a national park is?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | dallo,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 3. Did everyone enjoy the boat trip? Why?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Why did they use a mask and snorkel?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Write a competition entry about 'A visit to a market' w                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | ith your own ide                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| " A visit to a market "                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Remember to:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | -02                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| say where you were and what you did.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| use informal language and a mix of punctuation.  use adverbs to describe things.  use differe                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | nt adjectives.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| use adverbs to describe things.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| \$ A DE SECOND SE | 200                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Connect Plus 5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |



# Extra Vocabulary قیافیت اضافید England انجلترا sunny windy ماصف windy fox noise

### **Conjugation of Verbs**

### Regular verbs قطال المنتظمة

| THE STREET | Present                   | Past                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | PP A      |
|------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| visit      | J9.                       | يز visited                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | visited   |
| pass       | مُر                       | A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR | passed    |
| ask        | سأل                       | یا asked                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | asked     |
| wave       | وح بیده                   | waved                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | waved     |
| move       | حرك المراك                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | moved     |
| arrive     | מַנוֹל בּבּוֹל יִיס בּסיי | arrived يَ                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | arrived   |
| surprise   | فاجمأ                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | surprised |

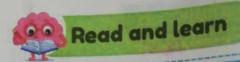
### الأفعال غير المنتظمة Irregular verbs

| Present | A Landa Lay  | Past  | PP A   |
|---------|--------------|-------|--------|
| leave   | يترك - يغادر | left  | left   |
| say     | يقول         | said  | said   |
| hear    | يسمع         | heard | heard  |
| hit     | يصدم         | hit   | hit    |
| run     | يجري         | ran   | run    |
| fall    | يسقط         | fell  | fallen |

### Vocabulary Study

| : with a lot of noise  wave : move your hand, or something in your hand, up and e  glad : happy about something  frightened : feeling afraid because you think something bad will h  hit : go into something quickly or hard                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 12 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| slad : happy about something  frightened : feeling afraid because you think something bad will have been something quickly or hard                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | in your hand, up and down              |
| hit go into comething quickly or hard                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                        |
| hit ag into comething quickly or hard                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | something bad will happen              |
| the state of the s | rd ad men your sales sit hyos          |
| : the feeling you have when you do not expect someth                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | do not expect something                |

Connect Plus 5



## The Railway Children,

Roberta, Phyllis, and Peter lived in a large house in London, England. One day, their father had to leave them to work in another country 0.

"This house is too expensive for us. While Father is away 9, we must leave London and move to a smaller house in the countryside 6," said their mother.

Their new house was near a railway . They arrived in the night and walked to the house from the station.

"Why is it so dark?" said Roberta. At night in London, there were always lots of bright colorful lights.

"There are no street lights 6 in the countryside," said their mother.

"And why is it so quiet?" asked Peter. In London, everybody walked quickly and talked loudly 6.

"There are not many people in the countryside," said their mother.

That night, the children did not sleep. It was quiet, but they could hear animals calling in the night.

"I'm frightened o," said Phyllis. "I don't like it here."

Everything looked very different in the morning. The house was small, but its rooms were sunny, and from their bedroom window, they could see beautiful green trees and fields. Every day, trains passed up and down the railway near their house. The children loved watching the

### by E. Nesbit

القائدي

سافر

والإيف

الد ترور

6

2 الله

ion

افاص

poshe

عاسري حد تد

يواء الشوارع

trains. When they waved o to people on the train, they usu waved back to them. One day, the children were walking near the railway. It was a very windy 9 day and Peter was very surprised o when he saw a big old tree. It was moving!

"Look!" he said. "The tree is falling on to the railway!"

"What can we do?" said Phyllis. "A train will hit @ it!"

"A train will be here soon," said Roberta. "Peter, 10 sweater is red. Take it off." "Wh he asked.

"We can make a flag with it. A flag means stop!"

They ran back along the railway a hill . When the train came, waved the sweater to stop it!



# The Railway Children,

The train was very fast, but the driver saw the red sweater and quickly stopped the train before it hit the tree.

Thank you, children!" the driver said. "You helped everybody on this train. You did the right thing!"

That night, they heard animals calling again in the dark.

"Are you still frightened of the countryside, Phyllis?" her mother asked.

"No, I know it is just a fox," said

"I didn't know what it was when we first arrived here."

### by E. Nesbit

"I like living here," said Peter.

"I'll be glad • when we go back to London," said Roberta, "but I understand life in the countryside now. It's a good place to live."

🔁 مسرور



### Exercises on Lesson



Complete the sentences with the correct words:

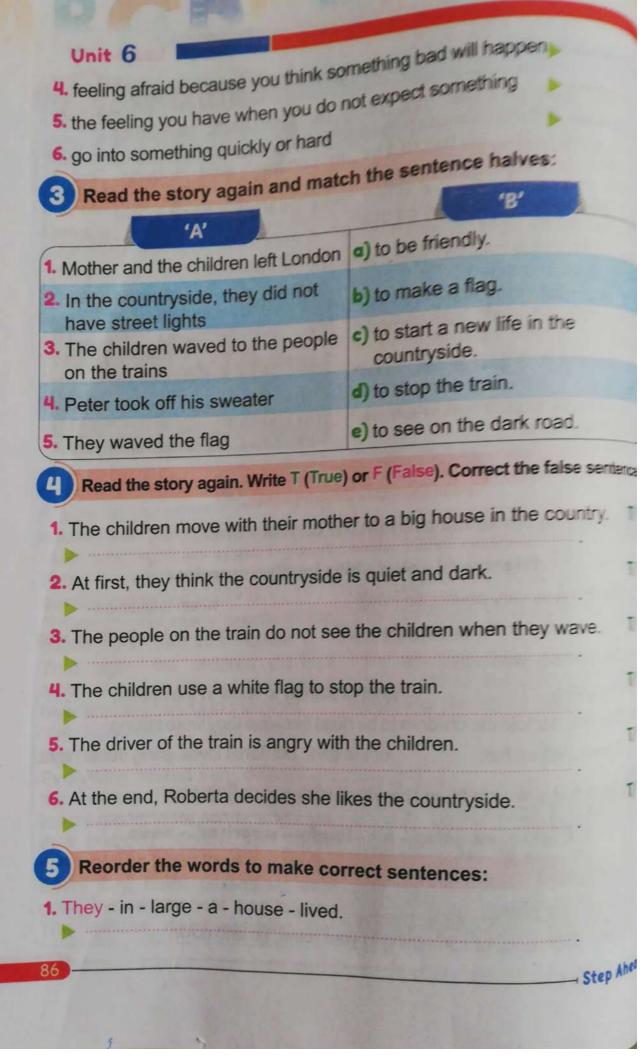
### frightened - glad - hit - loudly - surprised

- 1. The film was very boring, so I was ....... when it finished!
- 2 The car was going too fast and a tree, but everybody was OK. Nobody was hurt.
- 3. I was very when it started to snow in the desert!
- 4. The teacher told the children to be quiet because they were talking
- 5. Some children feel of the dark, but Tarek loves going out at night.
- 2 Match the words from the story with the definitions:

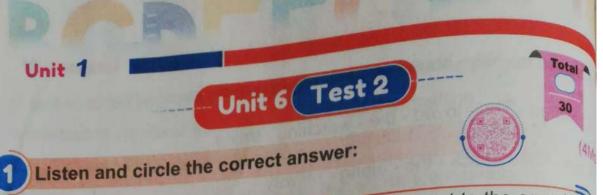
### frightened - glad - hit - loudly - surprised - wave

- 1. happy about something
- 2 with a lot of noise
- 3. move your hand, or something in your hand, up and down

Connect Plus 5 -



| 2. moved to - We - house - a smaller - England - in.                             | 7            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 3. children - The - loved - the - watching - trains.                             |              |
| They - back the                                                                  |              |
| 4. ran - They - back - the - along - railway.                                    |              |
| Number the events of the story in the correct order:                             |              |
| Mother and the children take a train to their new home.                          |              |
| b) The children watch trains passing up and down a railway line.                 |              |
| c) Roberta decides she likes the countryside.                                    |              |
| d) Phyllis feels frightened because she can hear animals.                        |              |
| e) The children's father goes to work in another country.                        |              |
| f) The driver stops the train and thanks the children.                           |              |
| g) A tree falls on the railway line on a windy day.                              |              |
| h) The children make a flag to stop the train.                                   |              |
|                                                                                  |              |
| Read the story again and Answer the questions:                                   |              |
| 1. Why is Phyllis frightened when they move to the countryside?                  |              |
| 2 Why do the children need to stop the train?                                    |              |
| 3. How do they stop the train?                                                   |              |
| What is different about London and where they move to?                           |              |
| Why do you think the children decide they like the countryside at the            | e end?       |
| If you were the children, would you prefer to live in the city or the count Why? | tryside?     |
| onnect Plans                                                                     | <b>—</b> (87 |



When Nesma was in Alexandria last June, she went to the aquarium. She really liked seeing the colorful fish and sea animals in the aquarium. It isn't very big, but there are lots of different things to see there. She learned a lot about fish in the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea, as well as fish which live in the Nile.

- 1. Nesma was in Alexandria last (May June July August).
- 2. Nesma went to the (citadel museum library aquarium).
- 3. She liked seeing (sea forest jungle desert) animals.
- 4. She learned a lot about fish in the Mediterranean (Nile Pole Lake Sea
- 2 Listen and answer the questions:



The Karnak Temple in Luxor is a very important monument, not only in Egypt but also the whole world. The old buildings there are made of stone. There isn't anything made from glass. Everyone feels very small when they see the statues there.

- 1. Where is the Karnak Temple?
- 2. What are the old building made of?

ملحوظة هامة؛ عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع ثُم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص. \* يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بمسح الكود الموجود للاستماع إلى نص الاستماع أو يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

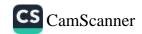
22

- Step Ahed



Test 1

| Read and complete the text with the words in the box:                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | (4Ms)             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| wironment - stores - movie theater                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                   |
| What are you doing, Dad?  I'm looking at these designs for the new shopping mall.  meeting the                                                                                                                                                                              |                   |
| : There'll be shoe stores, and things for the home.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                   |
| Nagwa: That's nice! Will it be too hot, though?  No, we're planting lots of plants there to keep people of look nice, and it will be good for the, too                                                                                                                      | o.                |
| Nagwa: Yes, lots of new buildings have plants growing in them the roof. People make rooftop gardens to get more nat our cities. Is there anything else for my friends?                                                                                                      | ure into          |
| Dad : Yes, there's a there, and a big fountain to Nagwa : I can't wait to see it, Dad! Everybody will love it.                                                                                                                                                              |                   |
| Read the following text and then answer the questions below                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | ow: (4Ms)         |
| El Fayoum is a town near the desert. It is in a big oasis. We can g by car, by bus or by train. There are many fields with canals and f grow many things there. North of the town there is a big lake. It's the                                                             | armers<br>ne Lake |
| Qarun. The town is famous for its big waterwheels. Many people visit El Fayoum on holidays                                                                                                                                                                                  | e like to         |
| Qarun. The town is famous for its big waterwheels. Many people                                                                                                                                                                                                              | e like to         |
| Qarun. The town is famous for its big waterwheels. Many people visit El Fayoum on holidays  Choose the correct answer:  1.El Fayoum is near the (fields – lakes – desert – frosts).  2. The town is famous for its big (oasis – rivers – waterwheels).                      |                   |
| Qarun. The town is famous for its big waterwheels. Many people visit El Fayoum on holidays  Choose the correct answer:  Lel Fayoum is near the (fields – lakes – desert – frosts).  The town is famous for its big (oasis – rivers – waterwheels).  Answer these questions: |                   |
| Qarun. The town is famous for its big waterwheels. Many people visit El Fayoum on holidays  Choose the correct answer:  1.El Fayoum is near the (fields – lakes – desert – frosts).  2. The town is famous for its big (oasis – rivers – waterwheels).                      |                   |



### Unit 1 The Reader The Bedouin Tribes of the Desert 5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (3) 1. Bedouins move to different places at different times of year because of their jobs. 2. Bedouin people have learned how to live in a cold place. Bedouins are very hospitable people. Goat meat is made in a pot with vegetables. Complete the following sentences: 5. Bedouin know how and where to dig ..... 6. The Bedouin are the oldest group of people in the deserts of North Africa and the Middle East. (4) Choose the correct answer: 1. I can't see (something - nothing - anything - everything) in the fridge to ear 2. Builders use steel and glass to (makes - made - make - making buildings look modern. 3. Is (everybody - somebody - nobody - someone) ready to go out? 4. There is (everything - anything - something - nothing) to do that night. better to go to bed. Order the words to make a correct sentence: 1. went - We - on - boat - trip - a. 2. in - they - the planetarium - What - see - did? Write an email to your American friend Jack: Tell him about the famous places and the monuments in your country Egypt. Tell him why tourists come to visit Egypt. Your email address Fady@school.com. Your friend's email is Jack@gmail.com. From: Subject: .....

**CS** CamScanner

- Step Ahed

### Theme (4) n a responsible person



### Good advice النصيحةالجيدة

#### In this unit I will

learn words for talking about sleep.
understand a story about the moon.
give advice about how to sleep well.
learn about the best times to do things.

do a healthy habits quiz.

use if to give advice.
understand the tides and how they can affect us.
learn about how to be careful in hot weather.

write an information leaflet about how to stay cool and safe. understand a story about King Canute and the tides.

#### **Objectives**

|                                        | - Words related to sleep: body clock, bright, darkness, full moon, moonlight, sleepy, wide awake                                         |  |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| Vocabulary                             | Words related to tides: Earth, gravity, high/low tides, moon                                                                             |  |
|                                        | Words from stories: bottom, disobey, edge, fair, intelligent, main effect, obey, officer, shout, throne                                  |  |
|                                        | - If you don't sleep well, you feel bad during the day.                                                                                  |  |
| Language                               | <ul> <li>When you go to bed, you shouldn't have your electronic devices with you.</li> <li>It's too early to go in the water.</li> </ul> |  |
|                                        | - I wasn't patient enough to listen to your advice.                                                                                      |  |
|                                        | - A story about a child who cannot sleep; a health quiz; a play about safety in the                                                      |  |
| Reading                                | swimming pool; a story about a family rescued from a high tide; the story of King Canute                                                 |  |
| Writing                                | <ul> <li>Writing advice; organizing and writing a leaflet using so that to give a reason and<br/>explanation for something</li> </ul>    |  |
| Speaking                               | <ul> <li>Talking about sleep; giving advice and discussing healthy habits; acting a play;<br/>giving reasons for something</li> </ul>    |  |
| Listening                              | - A discussion about the best times of day to do things; a play                                                                          |  |
| Life skills                            | - Problem solving: writing safety leaflets - Science appreciation: understanding the tides                                               |  |
| Values                                 | - Curiosity - Appreciation of science                                                                                                    |  |
| Issues and challenges                  | - Environmental responsibility - Preventative health                                                                                     |  |
| Integrated cross-<br>curriculum topics | Science: how the moon affects the tides                                                                                                  |  |



#### Unit 7

# Vocabulary Study

: the time of the month when we can see all of one side full moon

the moon

: the light from the moon moonlight

 the light from the sleep,
 something in your body that tells you when to sleep, body clock

wake up, and eat

: when there is no light darkness

: with a lot of light bright

be wide awake: feel like you can't or don't want to sleep

: feel like you need to go to bed and sleep be sleepy



### Did you know?

هل تعلم؟

We spend around one-third of our lives sleeping.

ندن نقضي حوالي ثلث عمرنا نائمين.



#### Read and learn

#### Marwan and the moon

موال والقمر

Marwan lives by the sea 0. One evening, he went to bed at the usual time, but he could not sleep. He heard his mom go past his bedroom door and said, "Mom, I can't sleep! I'm wide awake o! I'm not sleepy o at all!"

Mom came in his room and looked outside the window. "I know why you can't sleep," she said. "We have a full moon o tonight. Look." Marwan got out of bed and looked at the moon. "It's very beautiful, isn't it?" he said. Mom said, "It is. Look how the moonlight o shines on the sea."

"But Mom," said Marwan, "why does the full

moon stop me sleeping?"

"Well," said Mom, "it takes about 28 days for the moon to go around the Earth. When there is a full moon, we can see all of one side of the moon lit by the sun 6. Some people think that a full moon changes our body clocks . The moon's gravity could



) قريبًا من البحر إ متيقظ تماما ﴾لايشعر بالنعاس ) فمر مكتمل 🤅 فوء القمر

🧯 تنيره الشمس أساعات بيولوجية

🧚 باذبية القمر

أ تؤثر على نومنا



# Marwan and the moon

app play

"So, the moon's gravity is stopping me sleeping," said Marwan. Yes, but it's mainly to because the full moon is very bright, بشكل آساسي 🐠

so our body clocks think it's still day time ..." 💋 ستارة سميكة

"That's very interesting, Mom," said Marwan, "but I need to get up early to help Dad. We're going fishing. I'll be really tired if I can't get to sleep."

😉 في ظلام 🙆 في غضون

النهار 🛈

"No problem," said Mom, "I'm going to put this thick curtain دخل في النوم ك e across the window."

As soon as Mom did this, the room was in darkness 6 and Marwan started to feel sleepy. Within ten minutes, he fell asleep to and slept very well until morning.



### Exercises on Lesson



Read and complete the text with words from the box:

# light - clocks - moon - gravity - Earth

The moon takes about 28 days to go around the When there is a full 2 , we can see all of one side of the moon lit by the sun. Some people think that a full moon changes our body . The moon's 🧿 ...... could affect our sleep.

Complete a summary of the story with these words:

### awake - body clocks - bright - darkness full - mom - moon - moonlight - sleepy

| Marwan couldn't    | get to sleep. He was wide 0<br>to help him sleep. She | said his bedroom was                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| his o              | to help min sloop.                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| too 6              | because of the                                        | Mom explained how the                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| looked at the 9    |                                                       | . She closed                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| IUII 6             | can affect our 0                                      | . Marwan started to                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| the curtains and t | the room was in 6                                     | seed has a tollow the                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| feel o             | and he was soon asleep.                               | ON THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERT |

Connect Plus 5

| 3 Match the words from the story to the definitions:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Match the words from the story                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |          |
| 'B'                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 1        |
| 'A'                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 0        |
| 1. be wide awake a) feel like you need to go to bed and slee                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | عال در   |
| 2. be sleepy  b) the time of the month when we can see side of the moon                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | all Of O |
| 3. a full moon c) the light from the moon                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |          |
| 4. moonlight d) when there is no light                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |          |
| 5. body clock e) with a lot of light                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |          |
| 6. bright f) feel like you can't or don't want to sleep                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | )        |
| 7. darkness  g) something in your body that tells you when wake up, and eat                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | nen to s |
| Read the story again and answer the questions:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |          |
| 1. Where is Marwan in the story?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |          |
| 2. Who helps him?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |          |
| 3. How can the full moon affect our sleep?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |          |
| The state of the s |          |
| 4. What happens to Marwan at the end of the story?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |          |
| 5. What does Mom do to help him to do this?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |          |
| 5 Read the story again and choose the correct word from                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | the bo   |
| bright - body clock - moonlight - sleepy - darkness - full moon -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | wide a   |
| 1. It was midnight. I could see the trees clearly in the moonlight.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |          |
| 2. The was big and round in the night sky.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | ii.      |
| 3. The light from the flashlight was very                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |          |
| 4. My tells me when to wake up and when to                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |          |
| 5. Lara woke up early. She was                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | sleep.   |
| 5. Lara woke up early. She was so she got u                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | p.       |
| 6. Dad turned off the light and the room was in  7. It was late, and Fares was                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |          |
| 7. It was late, and Fares was so he went to be                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | ed.      |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | _ Step   |

| a | Read                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | and   | match | "A"                             | with | " | 1 |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|-------|---------------------------------|------|---|---|
|   | The same of the sa | 10.00 |       | COLUMN TO A STATE OF THE PARTY. |      |   |   |

# 1. What problem does Marwan have?

- How does a full moon affect people?
- What is moonlight from a full moon like?
- 4. What does Marwan's mom do to help him sleep?
- Some people think it changes out body clocks.
- b) He can't sleep.
- c) She pulls a thick ourtain across the window.
- d) It's very bright.

### Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

# darkness - body clock - wide awake - full - moonlight - sleepy - bright

- 1. Tamer felt so he went to bed.
- 2. We couldn't see anything in the so we used a flashlight.
- 3. Talia was at five o'clock in the morning!
- 4. The is shining on the water.
- 5. The sun is today so I'm wearing sunglasses.
- 6. Can you see the ..... moon?
- 7. My ..... thinks it's bedtime now!

### 8 Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. lives Marwan sea the by.
- 2. at went to the usual bed time Marwan,
- 3. A changes full moon our clocks body.
- 4. the Put curtain the window across.
- 5. fell He asleep minutes ten within.
- 6. helps What you get to sleep?

Connect Plus 5 -



| Activity Book  |              | 10000           | 100000000000000000000000000000000000000 |
|----------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------------|
| football coach | مدرب کرة قدم | thirsty         | عطشان                                   |
| kick the ball  | يركل الكرة   | sleep easily    | ينام بسهولة                             |
| close to       | مَريب من     | give advice     | يقدم نصيحة                              |
| warm milk      | حلیب دافمهٔ  | describe a fact | تصف حقيقة                               |
| headache       | صداع         | instructions    | تعليمان                                 |
| enough water   | ماءِ کافِ    | children        | أطفال                                   |

### **Conjugation of Verbs**

### Regular verbs قمة الأفعال المنتظمة

| Present                 |           | Past    | PP A    |
|-------------------------|-----------|---------|---------|
| relax                   | يسترخي    | relaxed | relaxed |
| need                    | يحتاج     | needed  | needed  |
| kick                    | يركل      | kicked  | kicked  |
| Management of the first | يحاول     | tried   | tried   |
| try                     | PEDIT DEC | studied | studied |
| study                   | يدرس      | otadio  |         |

# الأفعال غير المنتظمة Irregular verbs

|      |                      | Past | PP    |
|------|----------------------|------|-------|
| keep | resent يحتفظ - يُبقي | kept | kept  |
| give | يعطي علامة المام     | gave | given |
| read | يقرأ                 | read | read  |

Connect Plus 5



نصائح لتوم أفضل

Pieces of advice for a better sleep Coach: Hi! Great to see everybody! I want to talk to you about something

very important this morning: sleep •. Why do you think sleep important?

Younis: So we don't feel tired during the day.

Coach: Yes! When you don't sleep well, you feel bad during the day. Yo can't study or do your best at sports. So here are some tips of how to sleep well. First, if you don't feel sleepy of at bedtime, have a shower or bath. This will help your body and muscles o to rela Does anybody do this?

Fares : Not always, but I always have a shower in the morning.

Coach: Try changing this and you should see a difference o. Tip number two: If you need to go to sleep soon, don't use phones or table close to bedtime 6. When you go to bed, you shouldn't have you electronic devices o with you. ا نوم

Younis: Why, Coach?

أ نطائح Coach: Because your brain keeps working 6 hard, and it can't relax. Another tip: Don't eat a big meal close أتشعر بالنعاس to bedtime. When you eat a big meal, your body ülline ( has to work too hard to digest o the food. Does اختلاف ا anyone here read books at bedtime?

Fares :Yes, I do!

عندما تقترب من فترة النوم أجهزة الكترونية

Coach: Good. If you want to feel sleepy, read a good book at bedtime. Don't go to bed too late - around 10 pm بسمر في العمل ( is great. And finally, your bedroom should be dark بهضم ( when you sleep. If the street lights @ are bright outside your room, make sure u you have good curtains. Also, don't listen to loud music in bed.

أفواء الشارع أ تأكد أن

Younis: OK, thanks Coach!

### Grammar Studu

#### Giving Advice اسداء النصح

🔟 There are so many ways to give advice. -بعدة طرق منها:-

We use the infinitive without to, to give the advice, for example:

الفعل في المصدر في بداية الجملة أو (Don't) ثم المصدر:

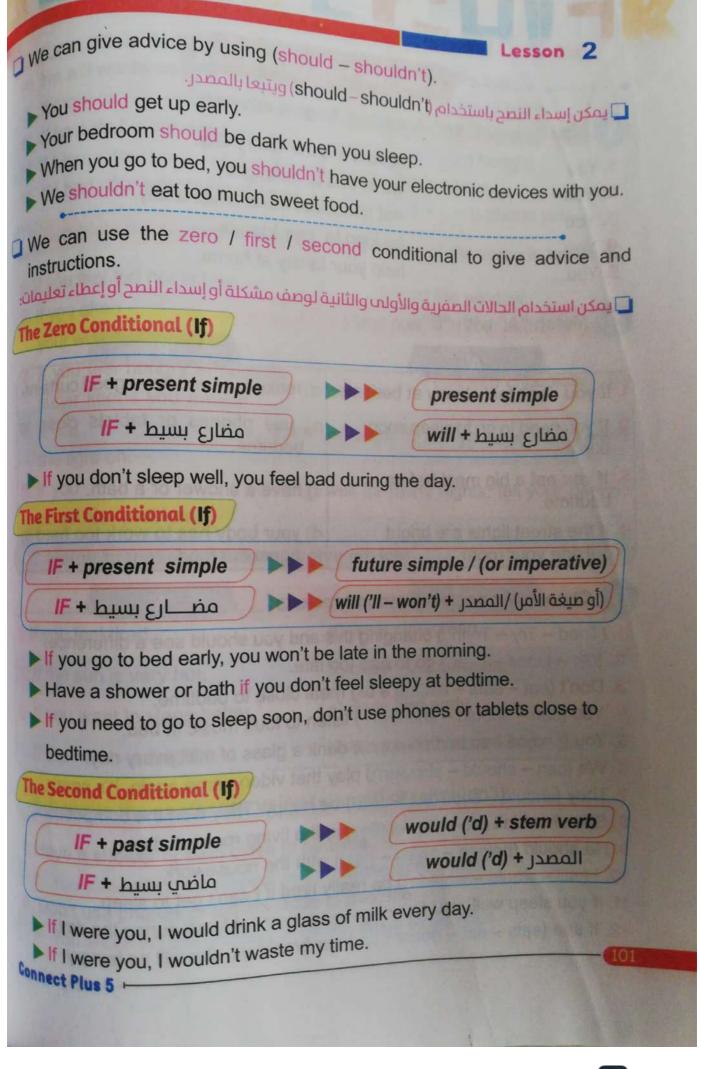
Have a bath.

Don't look at your phone.

100

- Step Ahr





#### Unit 7

# Exercises on Lesson (2)



# Use "should" or "shouldn't" to give advice:

have a shower every day. 1. You

go to bed at midnight. 2. You

eat chocolate three times a day. 3. You

be kind to your friends. 4. You

help your family at home. 5. You

### Match "A" with "B":

#### 'A'

B'

- 1. If you don't feel sleepy at bedtime, a) make sure you have good curtains
- 2. If you need to go to sleep soon, don't
- If you eat a big meal before bedtime.
- 4. If the street lights are bright outside your room,

- b) use phones or tablets close bedtime.
- c) have a shower or a bath.
- do your body has to work too hard to digest the food.

### Choose the correct word in brackets:

- 1. (Tried Try Trying) changing this and you should see a difference.
- (Do Does Don't) go to bed too late.
- 3. Don't (eat eats eating) a big meal close to bedtime.
- 4. You (can should shouldn't) listen to loud music in bed.
- 5. You (should shouldn't can't) drink a glass of milk every day.
- 6. We (can should shouldn't) play that video game again. It's scary.
- 7. They (should shouldn't can't) be happy. They won the competition.
- 8. She shouldn't (sit sits sitting) in the living room all day.
- 9. He should (helped helps help) with the housework.
- 10. I (will would wouldn't) be really tired if I can't get to sleep.
- 11. If you sleep well, you (felt feel are feeling) fresh during the day.
- 12. If she (eats eat doesn't eat) her breakfast, she will be hungry.

102

Step Ahe

get up early, you (will - won't - would) miss the bus. Jf you so won't - would) miss the bus.

He will waste water if he always (has - have - will have) baths. He will have will wake - doesn't wake) me up, I will get up late. 15. If more eats his sandwiches, he (is - will be - won't be) hungry. 16. If no - have - were) you, I'd ask the teacher's advice. 7. If I had your telephone number, I (will – would – can't) phone you. complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets: feel too hot in bed, (open) the window. 2. If you often (hear) loud noises in your bedroom, close your windows well. 3, If you feel hungry at bedtime, (not eat) chocolate. The sugar keeps you awake! (be) scared of the dark, ask your parents to leave the light on. (not sleep) well for many nights, tell your parents about the problem. Match to make sentences to give advice: 'B' 'A' a) wear sunscreen. If you feel tired, b) close your curtains. If the sun is very hot, c) go to bed early. If you want to sleep better, d) have a bath at bedtime. If the moon is bright, Rewrite the sentences using (should) or (shouldn't): Have a shower or bath close to bedtime. Should have a shower or bath close to bedtime. on't use phones or tablets close to bedtime. You shouldn't use phones or tablets close to bedtime. Mect Plus 5 -

|              | Unit 7                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3.           | Don't do your homework close to bedtime.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 4. 1         | Don't eat a big meal close to bedtime.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|              | ***************************************                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 5 1          | ind a book you like and read it at bedtime.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|              | ind a book you like cit                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|              | w. stopp to hedtime.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 6. [         | Orink some warm milk close to bedtime.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| •            | •                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 7. [         | Don't go to bed too late.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 1            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 8. [         | Don't listen to loud music at bedtime.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 7            | Order the words to make correct sentences:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 1 d          | o - Why - you - sleep is - important - think?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| u            | o - Wily - you - sleep is - important - tilling:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 2. 1         | isten to - music - loud - Don't - in - bed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>3.</b> to | o sleep - are - Here - tips - some - well.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|              | ablets - Don't - use - bedtime - to - close.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| •            | doc bediine - to - close.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| E -          | olov Hoving I. I                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 3. 10        | elax - Having - helps - a shower - your body - to.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>o.</b> y  | ou - Do - read - at - bedtime                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 7.1          | - a shower - always is "                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| D            | - a shower - always - in - the morning - have.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 8.0          | 10 - too - Don't                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| - 9          | o - too - Don't - to - late - bed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|              | to - late - bed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 04           | The state of the s |



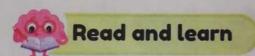
#### Unit 7 Conjugation of Verbs الأفعال المنتظمة Regular verbs Past Present enjoyed enjoyed enjoy يستمتع ر walked walk يمشي remembered remembered remember يتذكر

يحقق - ينجز

#### الأفعال غير المنتظمة Irregular verbs

achieved

| Prese        | nt       | Past         | PP           |
|--------------|----------|--------------|--------------|
| put together | نجمع     | put together | put together |
| drink        | يشرب     | drank        | drunk        |
| spend "time" | يقضي وقت | spent        | spent        |
| find         | يجد      | found        | found        |



#### **Healthy habits**

achieve

Find a healthy balance of play and exercise, healthy food, water, social time @, and good sleep. When you put together o all these things, you can be your best and achieve @ everything you want. Put your phone away when you can and enjoy the outside world with your family and friends. If you have healthy habits 9, you feel strong, happy, and have good relationships 6.



PP

walked

achieved

🕜 يحقق - يُنجز - يُتم 🕝 عادات صحية

ا علاقات

🛭 توازن صحب 🛭 وقت للتواصل المجتمعي 🖯 تجمع سوپا

106

Step Aheo



### Exercises on Lesson (3)

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

healthy - achieve - social - habits - balance

To be healthy, you should have a healthy o \_\_\_\_\_ of play and exercise, healthy food, water, e time, and good sleep. When you put together all these things, you can be your best and everything you want. Put your phone away when you can and enjoy the outside world with your family and friends. If you have healthy o , you feel strong, happy, and have good relationships.

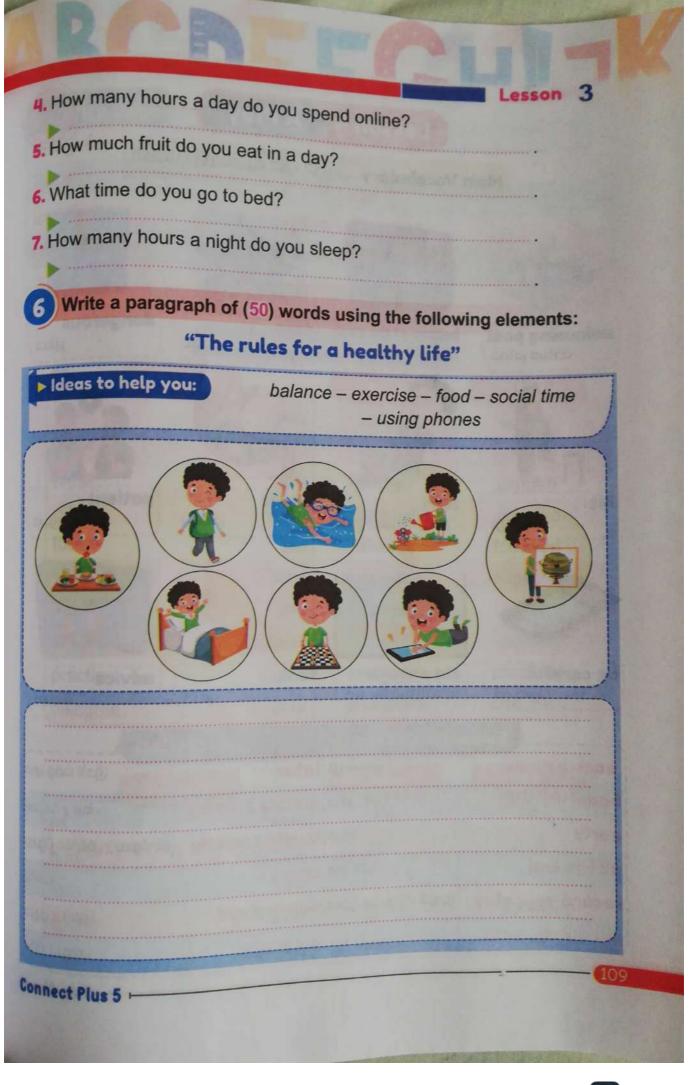
### Read the text and answer the questions:

In the past, life was different. People were poor and life was difficult, but they were happy. There wasn't a metro. There weren't lots of cars and tall bulidings. There were small houses to live in. But, there was healthy food to eat. Life was healthy, calm and quiet. They had time to play. They had time to rest. They had time to sit and speak with each other. I think life in the past was happier than life today.

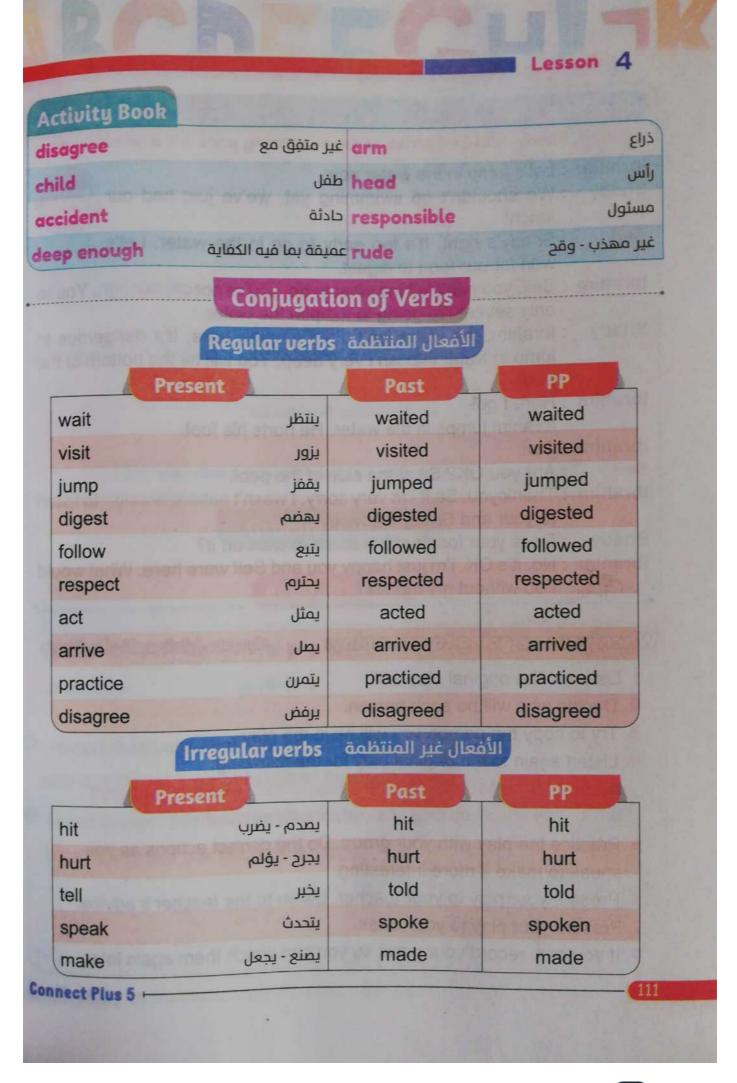
- Choose the correct answer:
  - 1. Life was (easy quiet bad) in the past.
  - 2. People were (happy sad angry) in the past.
- Answer these questions:
  - 3. Where did people in the past live?
  - 4. Was there a metro in the past?

| u | n | iŧ. | 1 |
|---|---|-----|---|

| 1. mom - is - talking to - her - in the kilotes.  2. should - Why - we - water - drink?  3. time - What - you - do - bed - go to?  4. should - You - water - every - drink - day.  5. for one - should - hour - You - exercise - per day.  6. you will - If - eat - you - fruits, - feel better.  7. to - go - Try - to - early - bed.  8. a night - should - We - sleep - eight hours - for.  4. Complete the sentences so that they are true for you:  1. I eat when I want a snack.  2. I do some exercise. I and  3. I spend hour/hours a day using my phone.  4. I don't eat a lot of  5. I eat a lot of  6. I usually go to bed at hours a day outside with my friends.  6. How healthy are you?  6. How much water do you drink a day?  7. How much time do you spend exercising? | 3 Order the words to make correct serve                |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|----|
| 2. should - Why - we - water - drink? 3. time - What - you - do - bed - go to? 4. should - You - water - every - drink - day. 5. for one - should - hour - You - exercise - per day. 6. you will - If - eat - you - fruits, - feel better. 7. to - go - Try - to - early - bed. 8. a night - should - We - sleep - eight hours - for. 4. Complete the sentences so that they are true for you: 1. I eat                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 1. mom - is - talking to - her - in the kitchen        |    |
| 4. should - You - water - every - drink - day.  5. for one - should - hour - You - exercise - per day.  6. you will - If - eat - you - fruits, - feel better.  7. to - go - Try - to - early - bed.  8. a night - should - We - sleep - eight hours - for.  4. Complete the sentences so that they are true for you:  1. I eat when I want a snack.  2. I do some exercise. I and  3. I spend hour/hours a day using my phone.  4. I don't eat a lot of  5. I eat a lot of  6. I usually go to bed at  7. I spend hours a day outside with my friends.  6. How healthy are you?  6. How much water do you drink a day?  6. How much time do you spend exercising?                                                                                                                        |                                                        |    |
| 5. for one - should - hour - You - exercise - per day.  6. you will - If - eat - you - fruits, - feel better.  7. to - go - Try - to - early - bed.  8. a night - should - We - sleep - eight hours - for.  4. Complete the sentences so that they are true for you:  1. I eat                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 3. time - What - you - do - bed - go to?               |    |
| 6. you will - If - eat - you - fruits, - feel better.  7. to - go - Try - to - early - bed.  8. a night - should - We - sleep - eight hours - for.  4 Complete the sentences so that they are true for you:  1. I eat when I want a snack.  2. I do some exercise. I and  3. I spend hour/hours a day using my phone.  4. I don't eat a lot of  5. I eat a lot of  6. I usually go to bed at  7. I spend hours a day outside with my friends.  6. How healthy are you?  7. How much water do you drink a day?  8. How many sodas do you drink every day?  9. How much time do you spend exercising?                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                        |    |
| 7. to - go - Try - to - early - bed.  8. a night - should - We - sleep - eight hours - for.  4. Complete the sentences so that they are true for you:  1. I eat when I want a snack.  2. I do some exercise. I and  3. I spend hour/hours a day using my phone.  4. I don't eat a lot of  5. I eat a lot of  6. I usually go to bed at  7. I spend hours a day outside with my friends.  5. How healthy are you?  6. How much water do you drink a day?  6. How many sodas do you drink every day?  7. How much time do you spend exercising?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 5. for one - should - hour - You - exercise - per day. |    |
| 8. a night - should - We - sleep - eight hours - for.  Complete the sentences so that they are true for you:  1. I eat when I want a snack. 2. I do some exercise. I and 3. I spend hour/hours a day using my phone. 4. I don't eat a lot of 5. I eat a lot of 6. I usually go to bed at 7. I spend hours a day outside with my friends.  How healthy are you?  How much water do you drink a day?  How many sodas do you drink every day?  How much time do you spend exercising?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 6. you will - If - eat - you - fruits, - feel better.  |    |
| Complete the sentences so that they are true for you:  1. I eat                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 7. to - go - Try - to - early - bed.                   |    |
| 1. I eat                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 8. a night - should - We - sleep - eight hours - for.  |    |
| 2. I do some exercise. I                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Complete the sentences so that they are true for you:  |    |
| A. I spend hour/hours a day using my phone.  4. I don't eat a lot of hours.  5. I eat a lot of hours.  6. I usually go to bed at hours a day outside with my friends.  7. I spend hours a day outside with my friends.  8. How healthy are you?  9. How much water do you drink a day?  9. How many sodas do you drink every day?  9. How much time do you spend exercising?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                        |    |
| I usually go to bed at hours a day outside with my friends.  How healthy are you?  How much water do you drink a day?  How many sodas do you drink every day?  How much time do you spend exercising?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 3. I spend hour/hours a day using my phone.            |    |
| How healthy are you?  How much water do you drink a day?  How many sodas do you drink every day?  How much time do you spend exercising?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                        |    |
| How much water do you drink a day?  How many sodas do you drink every day?  How much time do you spend exercising?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                        |    |
| How many sodas do you drink every day?  How much time do you spend exercising?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | How healthy are you?                                   |    |
| How much time do you spend exercising?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | . How much water do you drink a day?                   |    |
| <u> </u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | How many sodas do you drink every day?                 |    |
| •                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                        |    |
| Step And                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Step Ah                                                | ec |







#### اقرأ المسرحية

## Read the play

Ibrahim, Shady, and Seif arrive at the swimming pool. It's a beautiful day

Ibrahim: Let's jump in the water now.

: We shouldn't go swimming yet, we've just had our Shady

: Shady's right. It's too early to go in the water. Let's Seif

wait for our food to digest.

Ibrahim: Seif, you can't tell me what to do, you're not old enough. You're

only seven! I'm going to jump in the water.

: Ibrahim, the water isn't deep enough here. It's dangerous to Shady

jump in water that isn't very deep. You will hit the bottom of the

pool.

Ibrahim: Here I go!

Ibrahim jumps in the water. He hurts his foot.

Ibrahim: Ow!

: Are you OK? Sit at the side of the pool. Seif

Ibrahim: Thank you, Seif! I'm very sorry. I wasn't patient enough to listen

to your and Shady's advice.

: Does your foot hurt too much to walk on it?

Ibrahim: No, it's OK. I'm just happy you and Seif were here. What would

I do without my friends?

#### When you are going to act a plays

الماريد الهري المرابي المرابية

- Listen to the original play well.
- 2. Decide who will be each person.
- 3. Try to copy the person you will be in the play.
- 4. Listen again to the original play for the following:
  - a. How do they speak? Are they happy, sad, excited, or angry?
  - b. Do they speak quickly or slowly, loudly or quietly?
- 5. Practice the play with your group. Do the correct actions as you speak to make it more interesting.
- 6. Present your play to your teacher. Listen to the teacher's advice.
- 7. Present your play to your class.
- 8. If you can, record your plays so you can watch them again later.

- Step Ahead

# When you are going to act a plays

#### and the property of the second of the second

- 1. استمع جيدًا للمسردية الأملية.
- 2. قرر من سیقوم بأداء کل دور،
- حاول أن تُمَلد الشخصية التي ستقوم بأدائها.
- 4. استمع مرة أخرى للمسرحية الأصلية وركز مع:
- أ. كيف تتحدث الشخصيات؟ هل هم سعداء، حزانم، متحمسون أم غاضبون؟
  - ب. هل يتحدثون بسرعة أم ببطء؟ بصوتٍ عالٍ أم بهدوء؟
- 5. تمرن على المسرحية مع زملائك. قم بعمل الحركات الصحيحة المناسبة لما تتحدث به لتجهل تمثيلك ممتعًا.
  - .6 قم بعرض المسرحية على معلمك واستمع إلى نصيحته.
    - 7. قم بعرض المسرحية على الفصل.
  - 8. إن استطعت، قم بتسجيل مسرحياتك ڤيديو حتى تستطيع مشاهدتهم لاحقًا.

#### Grammar Study

## enough - too

| <b>♦ too</b>  | ريد من اللازم) | حدًّا جدًّا (أَ | ▶ too | (adj | (صفة   |
|---------------|----------------|-----------------|-------|------|--------|
| <b>♦</b> enou | ugh            | کافٍ            |       | (adj | enough |

- Ahmed likes basketball, but he is too short. = He isn't tall enough to play it. = He can't play basketball because he is short.
- I want to carry this box, but it's too big. = It isn't small enough. = Ican't carry this box because it's big.
  - (00) تتبع بصفة و تعطي معنى النفي .
    - enough) تأتي قبلها الصفة.

Connect Plus 5

## Exercises on Lesson (4)



## Read and complete the dialogue with words:

## advice – patient – to – too – enough

Shady : Ibrahim, the water isn't deep here. It's dangero

to jump in water that isn't very deep. You will hit the bottom of

pool.

Ibrahim: Here I go!

Ibrahim jumps in the water. He hurts his foot.

Ibrahim: Ow!

: Are you OK? Sit at the side of the pool.

Ibrahim: Thank you, Seif! I'm very sorry. I wasn't enough

to listen to your and Shady's .....

: Does your foot hurt \_\_\_\_\_ much to walk on it?

Ibrahim: No, it's OK. I'm just happy you and Seif were here. What would lo

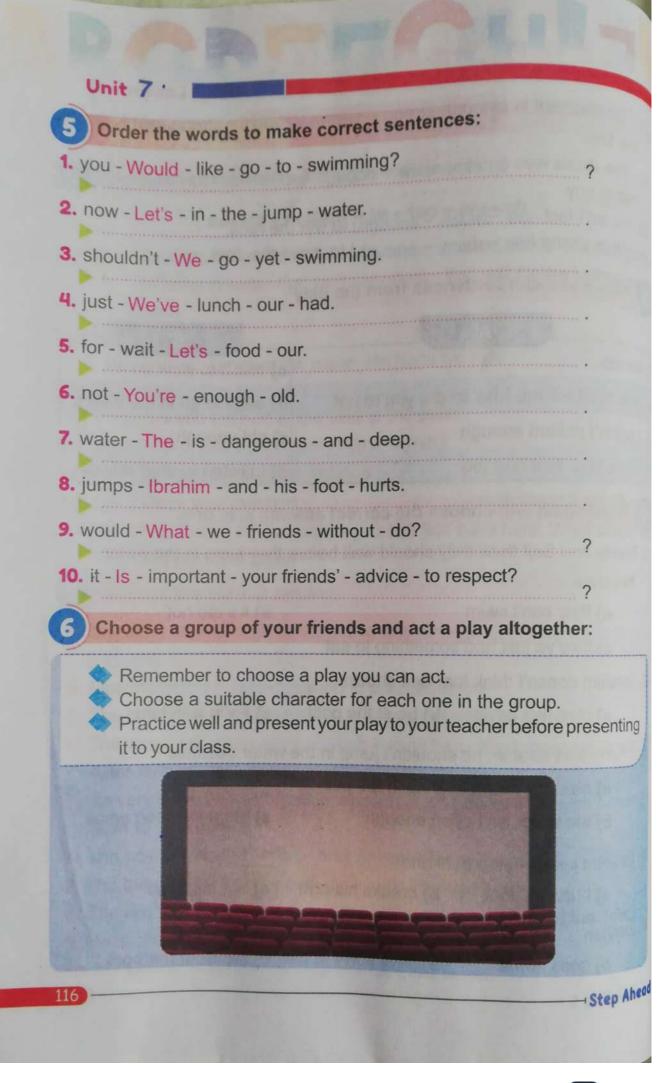
without my friends?

## Choose the correct answer:

- 1. You can't tell me what to do, you're not (enough old too enough of enough).
- 2. Mustafa is (too two to) short to play basketball.
- 3. The box is too (heavy heavier heaviest) for me to carry.
- 4. The water isn't deep (too enough very) here. It's dangerous to jumpi water that isn't very deep.
- 5. I'm very sorry. I wasn't (patient enough too patient enough patient)! listen to your advice.
- 6. The weather was (to too enough) cold for me to go out.
- 7. The baby isn't old (too enough much) to feed itself.
- 8. The lion is (strong stronger the strongest) enough to kill the deer.
- 9. He is clever (too enough very) to get the full mark.
- 10. My Grandma is (too enough much) old to run.

- Step Ahed

The elephant is (enough strong - strong enough - strong too) to break the tree. The dress was (to expensive - enough expensive - too expensive) for her to buy. He isn't fast (too - much - enough) to win the race. He is strong (too - many - enough) to move the desk. Match to make sentences from the play: 'A' 'B' ti's too much to walk on it? You can't tell me what to do, you're not early to go in the water. wasn't patient enough c) old enough. Does your foot hurt too to listen to your advice. Read again and choose the correct answer, a, b, or c: 1. Shady and Seif think they should wait before they jump in the water because ..... b) it's too hot d) they can't swim they've just had something to eat 2. Ibrahim doesn't think that Seif should c) swim with him a) give him advice b) be at the pool 3. Shady tells Ibrahim he shouldn't jump in the water because a) he's too young to jump in the pool c) the pool is too small b) the water isn't deep enough Ibrahim jumps in the pool and b) breaks his arm c) hits his head a) hurts his foot 5. Ibrahim b) says sorry to Seif c) swims in the pool a) goes home Connect Plus 5







## Saved from the sea

أنقد من البحر



My uncle is a fisherman and he lives I asked him. near the sea. When we visit him, we "There are two things that cause the beach below us.

to the people on the beach.

"Oh, dear! Not again!" said Uncle. was coming in, and there was water to do a drawing for you, here it is." all around them. They were very frightened and the child was crying. "Help me with the boat!" shouted o Uncle. He had a small boat on the beach, so we got in it and went quickly to the family. They were very happy when we took them back to the beach. They thanked us very much, then they went home.

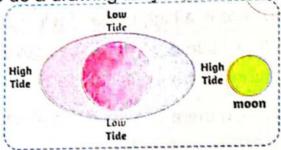
After this, we went back to Uncle's house to have dinner with the family. We told everyone about what happened 6.

"Why did this happen?" asked my little sister

"When the family walked to the before they go to the rocks, the tide was low," said Uncle. "But then the tide came in and the water was too deep of for them to they can get into walk to the beach."

"But what causes the tides o?"

like to go walking along the coast tides: the moon and the sun," he because it's beautiful. Last time said. "But the main effect o is from we went to see him, we went for the moon. When it moves around the a walk o late in the afternoon. Then Earth, its gravity o pulls the water on I heard someone shouting from the Earth towards it. This causes a high tide in the water nearest the moon. "Uncle," I said, "I think there's On the opposite side of Earth, the someone down there!" and I pointed moon's gravity pulls the Earth away from the water, so you get another high tide. So on two sides of the We ran down to the beach. There Earth we have the high tides and at were two parents and a child on the other two sides of the Earth we some rocks in the sea. The tide on have the low tides. Look, I'm going



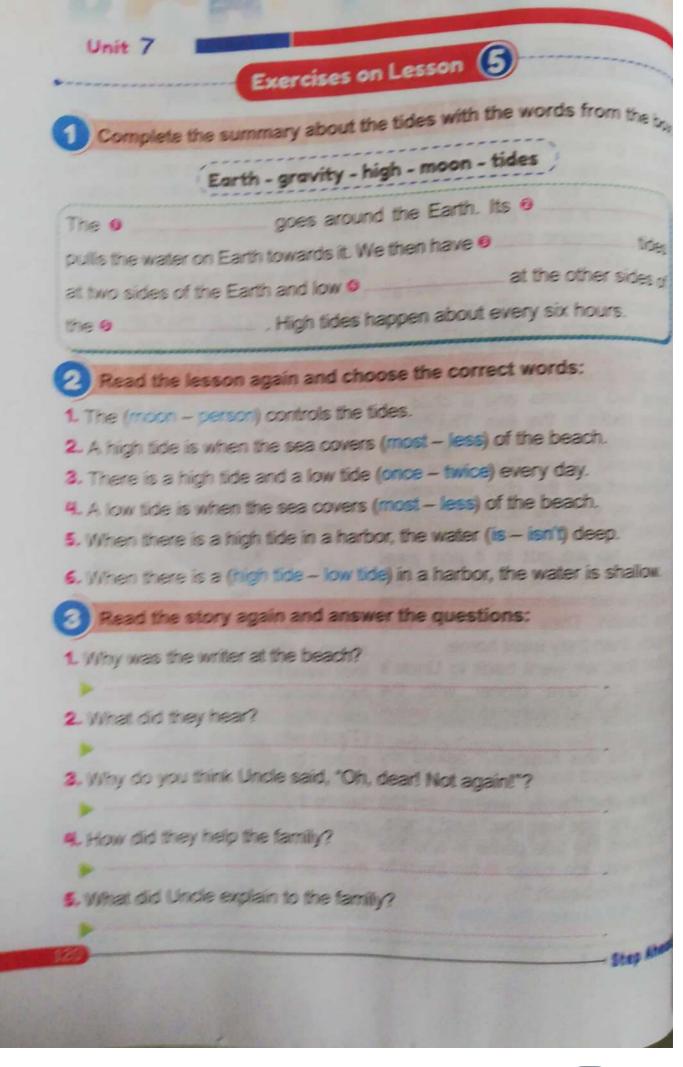
"That's fantastic!" I said. "So the moon is strong enough to pull all that water! How often @ do we get high tides?" "Twice every day," said Uncle. "That's why people should be careful and understand the tides beach. If they don't understand the tides. danger, like we saw

today."

🕕 ذهينا للتمشية வி ப்றி 🔞 المد و ماد عما حدث العميقة حدا ما سب المد pllcil? 📵 التأثير الأساسي

و جاذبیته 🕦 كم عدد المرات؟

Connect Plus 5 -



```
order the words to make correct sentences:
My - a - fisherman - is.
with my - near - family - the sea - live.
3, like - We - walking - the - along - coast.
4 tides - What - causes - the?
5. The - moves - moon - around - earth - the.
5. should - People - understand - tides - the.
5 Complete the sentences with the words in the box:
         Earth - gravity - moon - tides - water
1.The ..... goes around the Earth.
2. The moon's affects the tides.
3. On one side of the Earth, the moon's gravity pulls the
4. On the other side of the Earth, the moon's gravity pushes the
                 away from the water.
                 change about every 12 hours.
5. The
                                                              121
Annect Plus 5
```



| المادة ا |                                                          |                                                                |                                  |  |  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|--|
| Conjugation of Verbs  Irregular verbs قطال غير المنتظمة Present Past PP                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                          |                                                                |                                  |  |  |
| lose make wear forget have fun                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | یفقد - یخسر<br>یجعل - یصنع<br>یرتدی<br>ینسی              | lost made wore forgot had fun                                  | lost made worn forgotten had fun |  |  |
| When writing a le<br>sub-headings.<br>Use different expl                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | ressions to give<br>so that you have<br>otos and picture | advice.<br>ve interesting thir<br>es.<br>عم باختیار عنوان أسار |                                  |  |  |

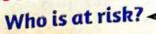
#### main heading

## sub-heading

## How to keep cool at home

#### Why is heat dangerous?

- Your body may lose water and salt quickly.
- You may get headaches.

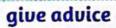


- ▶ Older people
- ▶ Young children
- People who are sick



### Tips for keeping cool:

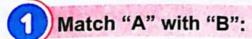
- Close your curtains during the day so that the sun will not make the rooms hot.
- Wear light-colored, loose clothes so that you will feel more comfortable.
- Drink lots of water so that you can stay well.
- Open your windows of night so that cooler air can come in.



photo







#### 'A'

- 1. Eat healthy food
- 2. Don't eat sweets
- Wear sunscreen
- 4. Wear sunglasses

#### B'

- a) so that your skin will not burn.
- so that you can stay healthy.
- c) so that your eyes can be protected.
- so that you will have good teeth

124

- Step Aheo

| Where did Amira go on vacation?  What do you think a national park is?  Did everyone enjoy the boat trip? Why?  Why did they use a mask and snorkel?  Write an information leaflet about staying safe when you go in your notebook:  Remember these things:  Write a main heading and two or three sub-headings.  Use sentences with the imperative and should, to give advice include a Don't forget tip.  Illustrate your leaflet with photos and pictures.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Did everyone enjoy the boat trip? Why?  Why did they use a mask and snorkel?  Write an information leaflet about staying safe when you go in your notebook:  Remember these things:  Write a main heading and two or three sub-headings.  Use sentences with the imperative and should, to give advice include a Don't forget tip.  Illustrate your leaflet with photos and pictures.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Did everyone enjoy the boat trip? Why?  Why did they use a mask and snorkel?  Write an information leaflet about staying safe when you go in your notebook:  Remember these things:  Write a main heading and two or three sub-headings.  Use sentences with the imperative and should, to give advice include a Don't forget tip.  Illustrate your leaflet with photos and pictures.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Why did they use a mask and snorkel?  Write an information leaflet about staying safe when you go in your notebook:  Remember these things:  Write a main heading and two or three sub-headings.  Use sentences with the imperative and should, to give advice include a Don't forget tip.  Illustrate your leaflet with photos and pictures.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Write an information leaflet about staying safe when you go in your notebook:  Remember these things: Write a main heading and two or three sub-headings. Use sentences with the imperative and should, to give advice Include a Don't forget tip. Illustrate your leaflet with photos and pictures.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Remember these things:  Write a main heading and two or three sub-headings.  Use sentences with the imperative and should, to give advice include a Don't forget tip.  Illustrate your leaflet with photos and pictures.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Remember these things:  Write a main heading and two or three sub-headings.  Use sentences with the imperative and should, to give advice include a Don't forget tip.  Illustrate your leaflet with photos and pictures.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Write a main heading and two or three sub-headings. Use sentences with the imperative and should, to give advice include a Don't forget tip. Illustrate your leaflet with photos and pictures.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Write a main heading and two or three sub-headings. Use sentences with the imperative and should, to give advice include a Don't forget tip. Illustrate your leaflet with photos and pictures.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Include a Don't forget tip.  Illustrate your leaflet with photos and pictures.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Include a Don't forget tip.  Illustrate your leaflet with photos and pictures.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Illustrate your leaflet with photos and pictures.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Illustrate your leaflet with photos and pictures.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| The state of the s |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Charles and the Control of the Contr |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |



| Activity Book |                            | th.                           |
|---------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| castle        | âعلة <mark>rain (n)</mark> | ىخر<br><sub>چاغۇ</sub> - يقېل |
| funny         | agree مَرِح                |                               |
| kind (adj)    | worried about              | مالد زالذاغ                   |

# **Conjugation of Verbs**

# Regular verbs قطال المنتظمة

| Present    | 1           | Past         | A PP         |
|------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| look after | یعتنی د     | looked after | looked after |
| ask        | يسأل        | asked        | asked        |
| shout      | يصرخ - يصيح | shouted      | shouted      |
| want       | بريد        | wanted       | wanted       |
| move       | يتحرك       | moved        | moved        |
| worry      | يقلق        | worried      | worried      |
| obey       | يطيع        | obeyed       | obeyed       |
| disobey    | השמז        | disobeyed    | disobeyed    |
| look after | أمييمة أ    | looked after | looked after |
| shout      | يميح-يمرخ   | shouted      | shouted      |
| stop       | يوقِف       | stopped      | stopped      |

## الأفعال غير المنتظمة Irregular verbs

| Pr       | esent               | Past                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| become   | THE PERSON NAMED IN |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | PP                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|          | Sita                | became                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | become                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| say      | يقول                | said                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| teach    | يُدرِس              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | said                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| stand up | يقف                 | taught                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | taught                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| see      | IN LAND WILLIAM     | stood up                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | stood up                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| tell     | עאו                 | saw                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | A Committee of the Comm |
|          | يخبر                | told                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | seen                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| show     | يُظهر - يعرض        | A RESIDENCE AND ADDRESS OF THE PARTY OF THE | told                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|          |                     | showed                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | shown                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

-Step Ahead

# Vocabulary Study

; clever and good at learning things

; a special chair a king or a queen sits on

do what a person or ruler asks you to do

the part of something that is farthest from the center

# Read and learn

# canute's beach in England

by E. Nesbit



الملك كانوت Canute Canute was the King of England around 1,000 years He was a very fair king of and looked after his people He was a great man was very strong and intelligents. Some said, "King who was you are the most powerful man on Earth!" But Canute became bored of what his officers said. He anted to show them that he was a normal person 6.

day, he was with his officers on the beach in southampton, a city in the south of England. His officers to him. "There isn't anything in this world that would sobey o you because you are so great o."

But what about the sea?" asked King Canute. wyou think it will obey me @?"

mourse!" said the officers. "Everything in is world obeys you, great king!"

ing Canute asked his servants o to put his near the edge u of the sea and he down. "Don't move, sea!" he shouted. He anted to teach his officers a lesson.

🚺 ملِك عادل

و ضاط

و ذکی

🗿 الرجل الأقوى

🤂 شخص عادي

ഗ്ഥള്യ 🗿

🕜 عظیم جدا

نطيعني 😉

و خدم

🐠 كرسي العرش

الله حافة



\*waited until the tide came in. First, it wet his feet and then his clothes. officers were very surprised, but they said nothing.

King Canute stood up. "You see," he said. "There is no man who stop the tides. Nothing is more powerful than nature!" ect Plus 5 .

| Read the story again and correct the sentence |
|-----------------------------------------------|
|-----------------------------------------------|

- 1. King Canute was a fair king and he looked after his castles.
  - King Canute was a fair king and he looked after his people. ....
- 2. His officers told him he was funny and kind.
- 3. His officers thought that nothing would obey the king.
- 4. One day, King Canute asked his servants to put his throne near the edge of the sea.

- 5. King Canute sat on his throne and waited for it to rain.
- 6. It was high tide and the king got cold.
- Write an email to Mom and Dad to tell them about the story of King Canute:

| •••       |            |                         |                            |            |                          |                 | X |
|-----------|------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|------------|--------------------------|-----------------|---|
| From:     |            | digita in               | a rooms ho<br>You will the | YOU SHE    | openiasons<br>into speni | Mear in the man |   |
| To:       |            |                         |                            |            | a specifical s           | pe 196 s        |   |
| Subject   | :          |                         |                            | ator sau s |                          | April 450       |   |
| Dear Mo   | m and Da   | id,                     |                            |            |                          | de direction    |   |
| I want to | tell you a | bout King               | Canute. Th                 | e king did | something                | g unusual       |   |
|           |            |                         |                            | Land Hard  | 10.00                    |                 |   |
| See you   | soon,      |                         |                            |            | AND PERSON               | ANGLES          |   |
|           | P. S. July | A STATE OF THE STATE OF |                            |            | many the                 |                 |   |

Connect Plus 5







Total A

## Listen and circle the correct answer:

the Earth away from the water, so you get another high tide. nearest the moon. On the opposite side of Earth, the moon's gravity pulls pulls the water on Earth towards it. This causes a high tide in the water main effect is from the moon. When it moves around the Earth, its gravity There are two things that cause the tides the moon and the sun. But the

- 1. There are (two three four five) things that cause the tides
- 2. The (sun water moon sea) moves around the Earth.
- 3. The (light soil dust gravity) of the moon pulls the water on Earth towards it.
- 4. We get a (low high normal middle) when the moon pulls the water on Earth towards it.

## Listen and answer the questions:

(2Ms

of water so that you can stay cool. colored, loose clothes so that you will feel more comfortable. Drink lots that the sun will not make the rooms hot. You should also wear lightget headaches. So you should close your curtains during the day so When you are hot, your body may lose water and salt quickly. You may

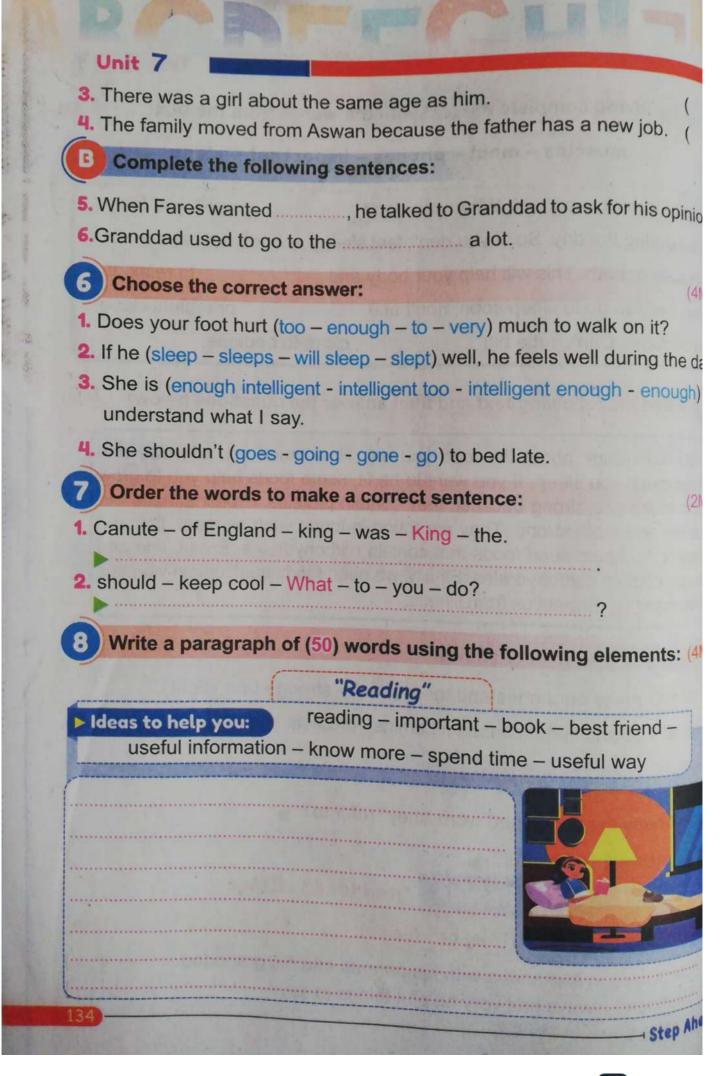
- 1. What happens when your body gets hot?
- 2. What should you do when you are hot?

ملحوظة هامة: عند إجابة سؤال الاستماع يجب على الطفل قراءة الأسئلة جميعها جيدًا قبل الاستماع نُم يقوم بالإجابة أثناء سماع النص. و المناع سماع النص. أيقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بمسح الكود الموجود للاستماع إلى نص الاستماع أو يقوم المُعلم أو ولي الأمر بالحرب الأمر بالجلوس مقابل الطفل وقراءة النص له ويقوم الطفل بالإجابة أثناء الاستماع.

- Step Ahed



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | est 3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the b                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | ox: (4Ms                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| muscles – meal – phones – important – sleep                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | The same of the sa |
| Sleep is very important. When you don't well, y bad during the day. So, if you don't feel sleepy at bedtime, ha shower or bath. This will help your body and to you need to go to sleep soon, don't use or table to bedtime. Don't eat a big close to bedtime.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | ve a<br>relax. If                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Read the following text and then answer the questions b                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | elow: (4Ms)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| You must think about the food you eat. How much you exe how much you sleep. If you want to be fit, some foods help you make you strong because they contain proteins. Proteins                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | u to grow                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| how much you sleep. If you want to be fit, some foods help yo and make you strong because they contain proteins. Proteins bones and teeth strong. They are found in foods such as meat beans. You also need foods that contain carbohydrates. Bread sugar contain carbohydrates. Finally, we need foods that contain because they protect us from illness.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | make our<br>, fish and<br>, rice and                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| how much you sleep. If you want to be fit, some foods help yo and make you strong because they contain proteins. Proteins bones and teeth strong. They are found in foods such as meat beans. You also need foods that contain carbohydrates. Bread sugar contain carbohydrates. Finally, we need foods that contain because they protect us from illness.  Choose the correct answer:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | make our<br>, fish and<br>, rice and<br>n vitamins                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| how much you sleep. If you want to be fit, some foods help yo and make you strong because they contain proteins. Proteins bones and teeth strong. They are found in foods such as meat beans. You also need foods that contain carbohydrates. Bread sugar contain carbohydrates. Finally, we need foods that contain because they protect us from illness.  Choose the correct answer:  Proteins make our bones and teeth (weak - strong - bad - light)                                                                                                                                                                       | make our , fish and , rice and n vitamins                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| how much you sleep. If you want to be fit, some foods help yo and make you strong because they contain proteins. Proteins bones and teeth strong. They are found in foods such as meat beans. You also need foods that contain carbohydrates. Bread sugar contain carbohydrates. Finally, we need foods that contain because they protect us from illness.  Choose the correct answer:  Proteins make our bones and teeth (weak - strong - bad - light)                                                                                                                                                                       | make our , fish and , rice and n vitamins                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| how much you sleep. If you want to be fit, some foods help yo and make you strong because they contain proteins. Proteins bones and teeth strong. They are found in foods such as meat beans. You also need foods that contain carbohydrates. Bread sugar contain carbohydrates. Finally, we need foods that contain because they protect us from illness.  A Choose the correct answer:  Proteins make our bones and teeth (weak - strong - bad - light Bread, rice and sugar contain (vitamins - proteins - fibers - care)  Answer these questions:                                                                         | make our<br>, fish and<br>, rice and<br>n vitamins                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| how much you sleep. If you want to be fit, some foods help yo and make you strong because they contain proteins. Proteins bones and teeth strong. They are found in foods such as meat beans. You also need foods that contain carbohydrates. Bread sugar contain carbohydrates. Finally, we need foods that contain because they protect us from illness.  Choose the correct answer:  Proteins make our bones and teeth (weak - strong - bad - light Bread, rice and sugar contain (vitamins - proteins - fibers - care                                                                                                     | make our<br>, fish and<br>, rice and<br>n vitamins                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| how much you sleep. If you want to be fit, some foods help yo and make you strong because they contain proteins. Proteins bones and teeth strong. They are found in foods such as meat beans. You also need foods that contain carbohydrates. Bread sugar contain carbohydrates. Finally, we need foods that contain because they protect us from illness.  Choose the correct answer:  Proteins make our bones and teeth (weak - strong - bad - light Bread, rice and sugar contain (vitamins - proteins - fibers - care)  Answer these questions:  What does the underlined word "they" refer to?  How are vitamins useful? | to grow make our fish and rice and vitamins t).  bohydrates).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |



Theme (4)
n a responsible person



People who help us الناس الذين يساعدوننا

#### In this unit I will ...

- > find out about people who help in our community.
- . use adjectives ending -ed or -ing.
- \* use will, won't, and can for offers, promises, and requests.
- understand a conversation and poster about a community event.
- · understand a story about an animal rescue.
- understand a school project about nocturnal animals.
- write an introduction to a school project.
- understand a story about animals in the city at night.

#### **Objectives**

| Vocabulary            | Adjectives: annoyed/annoying, excited/exciting, f<br>Words related to animals: bite, bright, deafening,<br>quiet, strange             | frightened/frightening, tired/tiring fishing net, flippers, loud, noise,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Language              | - Can you make some food for the party? - I won't be late It was really annoying! - She really enjoys it, and the children are really | <ul><li>- I'll make some bread.</li><li>- Will you help me?</li><li>- It's tiring, but it's great fun!</li><li>- excited to see her.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Reading               | Conversations between people who need help; a about rescuing a turtle; a project about nocturnal                                      | a poster for a repair day; a story animals; a story about birds who                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Writing               | Researching and writing about a nocturnal animal introduction to a project                                                            | the state of the s |
| Speaking              | Discussing people who help in the community; mequests; preparing for a repair day                                                     | naking offers, promises, and                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Listening             | A discussion about a cake sale                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Life skills           | - Problem solving: the problems of pollution -                                                                                        | Independence: managing sleep                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Values                | - Perseverance - Res                                                                                                                  | pect of nature                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Issues and challenges | - Environmental politica                                                                                                              | tainable development                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| ntegrated cross-      | Science: understanding animals that come out at r                                                                                     | night                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |



| Exit           | a Vocabulary                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | مات إضافية                                                                                                      | ak               |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| better place   | مكان أفضل                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | games                                                                                                           | ألعاب            |
| different ways | طرق مختلفة                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | great fun                                                                                                       | مرح رائع         |
| stronger       | أقوى                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | new things                                                                                                      | أشياءجديدة       |
| two hours      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | against                                                                                                         | ظد               |
| nice place     | مكان لطيف                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | <ul> <li>March Land Cold Cold Cold Cold At 16th Late 1 to 200 Cold Cold Cold Cold Cold Cold Cold Cold</li></ul> | مُعلَم           |
| park           | منتزه                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | people                                                                                                          | ناس              |
| once a week    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | make them safe                                                                                                  | يجعلهم آمنين     |
| twice a week   | The state of the s | make life better                                                                                                | يجعل الحياة أفضل |

| Activity Book         | and the re       | also struction to school a | and the second  |
|-----------------------|------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| Karnak Temple         | معبد الكرنك      | thunderstorm               | عاصفة رعدية     |
| center of the village | وسط القرية       | farm                       | مزرعة           |
| campfire              | نار المعسكر      | school trip                | رحلة مدرسية     |
| engineer              | مهندس            | football practice          | تدريب كرة القدم |
| washing machine       | غسالة            | notebook                   | دفتر - كراسة    |
| used to               | اعتاد أن         | movie                      | فيلم            |
| used to               | اختبار الرياضيات | vacation                   | عطلة - إجازة    |

# Conjugation of Verbs

# Regular verbs قمظتنما الأفعال المنتظمة

| and the same of th |                                          | Past      | PP Po                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Pres                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | ينظف                                     | cleaned   | cleaned ummpo                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| clean                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | يلتقط                                    | picked up | picked up 1 wan                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| pick up                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 7 15 15 15 15 15 15 15 15 15 15 15 15 15 | worked    | worked ed a o                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| work                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | يعمل                                     | enjoyed   | enjoyed                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| enjoy                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | يستمتع ب                                 | repaired  | repaired                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| renair                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | يصلح                                     | 1000      | TOTAL VALUE OF THE PARTY OF THE |

Connect Plus 5

| Present  | A PROPERTY. | Past      | PP        |
|----------|-------------|-----------|-----------|
| worry    | يقلق        | worried   | worried   |
| study    | يدرس        | studied   | studied   |
| practice | يمارس       | practiced | practiced |
| decide   | يقرر        | decided   | decided   |

## الأفعال غير المنتظمة Irregular verbs

| Pres       | ent          | Past    | PP      |
|------------|--------------|---------|---------|
| speak      | يتحدث        | spoke   | spoken  |
| meet       | يقابل        | met     | met     |
| teach      | يُدرس        | taught  | taught  |
| come       | يأتي         | came    | come    |
| see        | یری          | saw     | seen    |
| think      | يفكر - يعتقد | thought | thought |
| have - has | لديه - يملك  | had     | had     |
| leave      | يرحل         | left    | left    |



## Did you know?

هل تعلم؟

The police, firefighters, and doctors help people in the community for 24 hours a day, every day of the year! يساعد رجال الشرطة ورجال الإطفاء والأطباء الناس في المجتمع على مدار 24 ساعة في اليوم، وكل يوم على مدار العام.



#### Read and learn

## **Helping community**

We all live in a community of and we should all help the people who live in it. Have you ever wanted to be a volunteer of it's a great way to help your community. You can learn new skills of, make

new friends, and make your neighborhood of a better place. We spoke to people in our neighborhood about different ways people can make our community stronger.



0 مجتمع

و متطوع

مهارات جدیدهٔ

و دي سکني



138

Step Ahead

#### Lesson

## Helping community





"I decided to pick up garbage with my cousins. The park here is beautiful but there was lots of garbage in it. It was really annoying! We met one morning with gloves, bags, and special sticks to pick up the garbage. We worked for two hours, and then the park looked amazing. Now the park is a nice place to play again and people don't leave their garbage there."

- 😏 أجمع القمامة
  - ن فد
  - و ذوي الهمم
    - 😉 مطر غزیر
      - و إصلاح



"My uncle used to be really good at football when he was younger. He doesn't play any more, but he teaches the local children. I love playing on his team! We practice once or twice a week and we play games against 6 other teams. It's tiring, but it's great fun!"



"My grandma used to be a teacher and now she comes into our school sometimes to help children with special needs . She really enjoys it, and the children are really excited to see her!"



"My dad is a baker but he is really good at building. Last year, there was heavy rain on our village. It was frightening and lots of people were worried about their homes. My dad helped to repair lots of homes and buildings, to make them safe again. He made life better for our neighbors. Some days I helped him, too!"

If you want to help your community, think about what skills you have. How can you help other people? You might be surprised at the new things you can do!

Connect Plus 5

## **The Lesson Notes**

- frightened (adj) خاتف
- ◆ If an adjective ends in (-ed), it describes how a person feels.
  - ♦ الصفة المنتهية بـ (ed) تصـف كيـف يشـعر الشـخص (فـي الغالب تستخدم لوصـف عاقل).
- He was frightened on watching the movie.
- frightening (adj) مخیف
- If an adjective ends in (-ing), it describes the thing that makes the person feel like that.
  - ♦ الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) تصف الشيء الذي جعل الشخص يشعر بهذا (في الغالب تستخدم لوصف غير العاقل).
- ► The movie was frightening.
- ♦- نفس الأمر ينطبق على الصفات الآتية:

| "ed" adje  | ctives                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | "ing"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | adjectives 📗         |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| annoyed    | منزعج                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | the little of th | مزعج                 |
| frightened | خائف                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | frightening                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | مخيف                 |
| tired      | مُتعَب                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | tiring                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | مُتعِب               |
| worried    | مَلِق                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | worrying                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | مُقلِق               |
| excited    | שאבר - מדבמש                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | exciting                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | مثیر                 |
| surprised  | متفاجئ                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | surprising                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | مُفاحِئ              |
| interested | THE RESERVE THE PARTY OF THE PA | interesting                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                      |
| amazed     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | amazing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | ممتع - شیق<br>مُدهِش |
|            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 0                    |

140

- Step Ahe

## Exercises on Lesson (1)

Read and complete the dialogue with words:

special sticks - garbage - annoying - community - beautiful

Omnia: Did you help your

Habiba: Yes. My cousins and I decided to pick up

Omnia: Where did you start?

Habiba: The park here is but there was lots of

garbage in it. It was really annoying!

Omnia: When did you meet to pick up the garbage at the park?

Habiba: We met one morning with gloves, bags, and

to pick up the garbage.

Omnia: How long did you work?

Habiba: We worked for two hours, and then the park looked amazing.

Omnia: Well done, Habiba. Good work?

Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

special needs - local - repair - tiring neighborhood - annoying - sticks - frightening

- 1. Our supermarket is near the center of the village.
- 2. They've built some new houses in my
- 3. We found some and made a campfire.
- 4. The thunderstorm was very loud and .....!
- 5. Granddad says that working on a farm all day is very
- are learning a lot 6. The children with .....

in class today.

7. Can the engineer the broken washing machine?

8. I couldn't find my phone. It was very

Connect Plus 5 -

# Unit 8 3 Choose the correct word:

- 1. I was really (tired tiring) after the tennis practice.
- Some people were (frightening frightened) in the thunderstorm.
- The story in the newspaper was (worried worrying).
- 4. The book I am reading is really (exciting excited).
- 5. It was really (annoyed annoying)! There was much noise in the street
- 6. The park looked (amazing amazed)!
- Dad's work is really (tired tiring).
- That mask was really (frightening frightened).
- Lots of people were (worrying worried). The weather was so bad.
- 10. You might be (surprised surprising) at the new things you can do!

## Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

#### annoyed - annoying - excited - exciting - frightened frightening - tired - tiring

- when we went on a boat on vacation because I love going on the sea.
- 2. I go swimming for two hours every Saturday morning. It's but it makes me really fit.
- 3. Mom was because I left my school bag on the bus.
- 4. This book about snakes is ................................ I really don't like them!
- 5. The traffic at night is because it makes a lot of noise, and I can't sleep. I hate it!
- 6. Youssef visited lots of places in the city, and in the evening he was very
- 8. My little sister is ..... of the dark, so she has a light next to her bed

## Read the lesson again and answer:

- 1. How long did Habiba and her cousins work in the park?
- 2. How often does Youssef's football team practice?

Step Aheo





#### Lesson

## **Conjugation of Verbs**

## Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

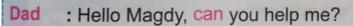
| Pres   | sent        | Past     | PP       |
|--------|-------------|----------|----------|
| damage | يتلف - يدمر | damaged  | damaged  |
| move   | يتحرك       | moved    | moved    |
| share  | يشارك       | shared   | shared   |
| boil   | يغلي        | boiled   | boiled   |
| paint  | يلون        | painted  | painted  |
| borrow | يستعير      | borrowed | borrowed |

### lrregular verbs قطال غير المنتظمة

| P      | resent       | Past   | PP           |
|--------|--------------|--------|--------------|
| cut up | يُقطِع       | cut up | cut up       |
| put    | يضع          | put    | put          |
| sleep  | ينام         | slept  | slept        |
| eat    | يأكل         | ate    | eaten        |
| get    | يحصل علم     | got    | got (gotten) |
| lend   | يسلّف - يعير | lent   | lent         |

### The library's new painting

الطلاء الجديد للمكتبة



Magdy: Yes, of course! What can I do?

Dad: I'm painting the library today. The rain water damaged it. We need

to move lots of books before we start!

Magdy: I'll help you with that! I can come at

ten o'clock after basketball practice.

Dad : Great! I'm going there now to start.

Magdy: OK Dad, I won't be late.

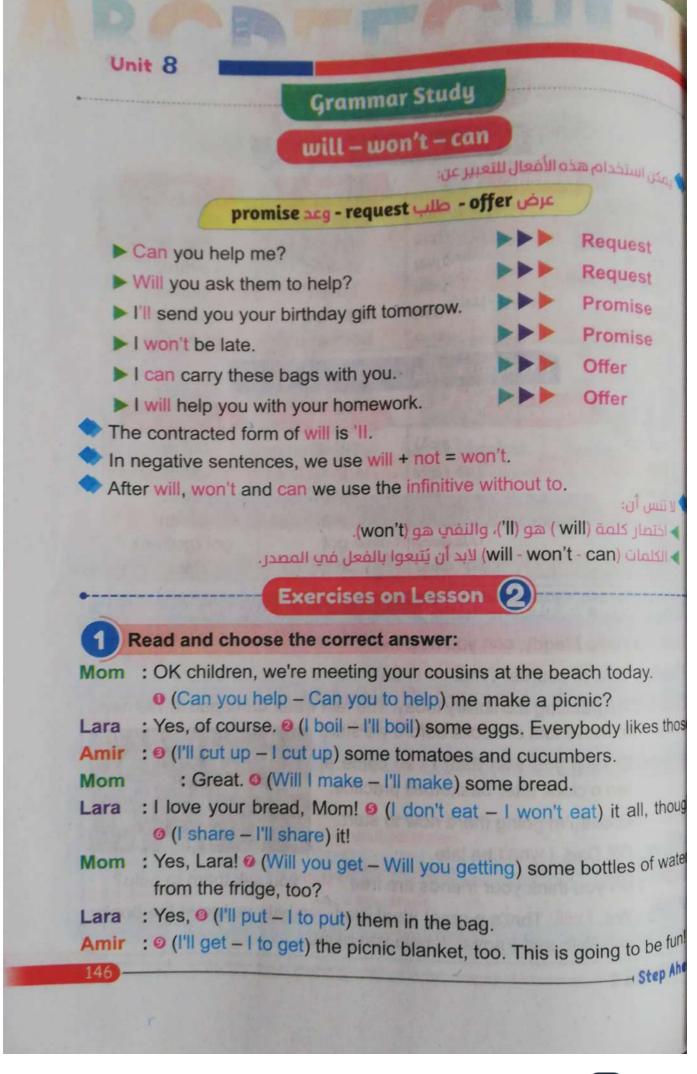
Dad : Do you think your friends are free? Will you ask them to help?

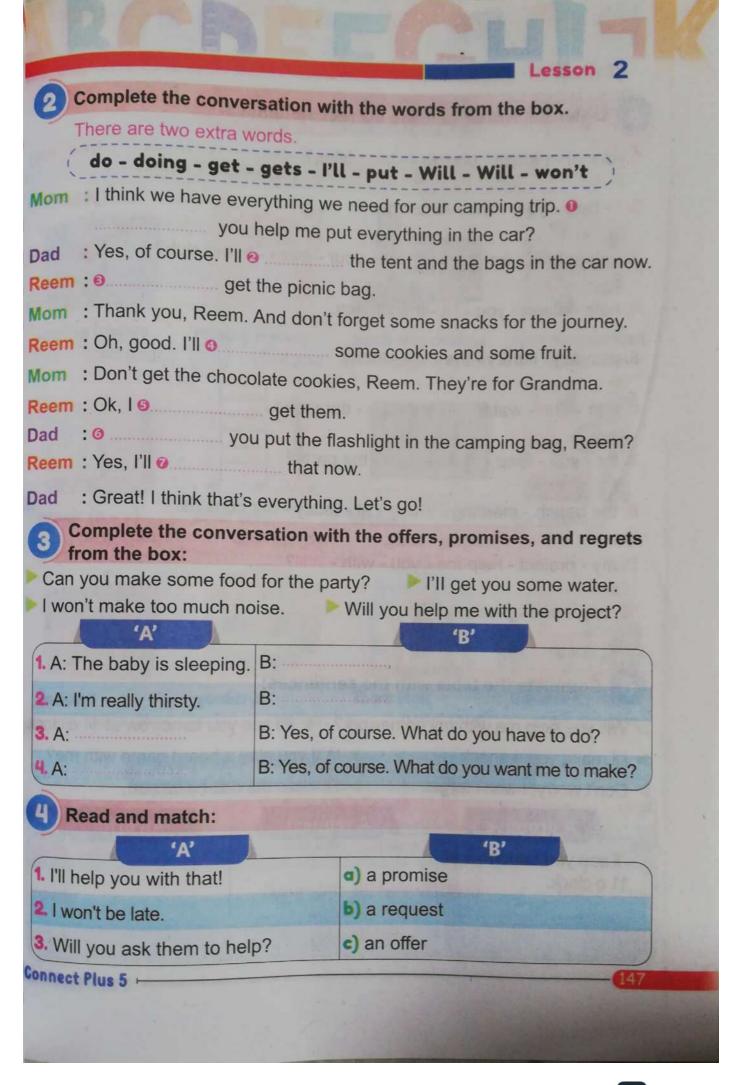
Magdy: Yes, I will. That's a great idea! Ziad can help us move the books

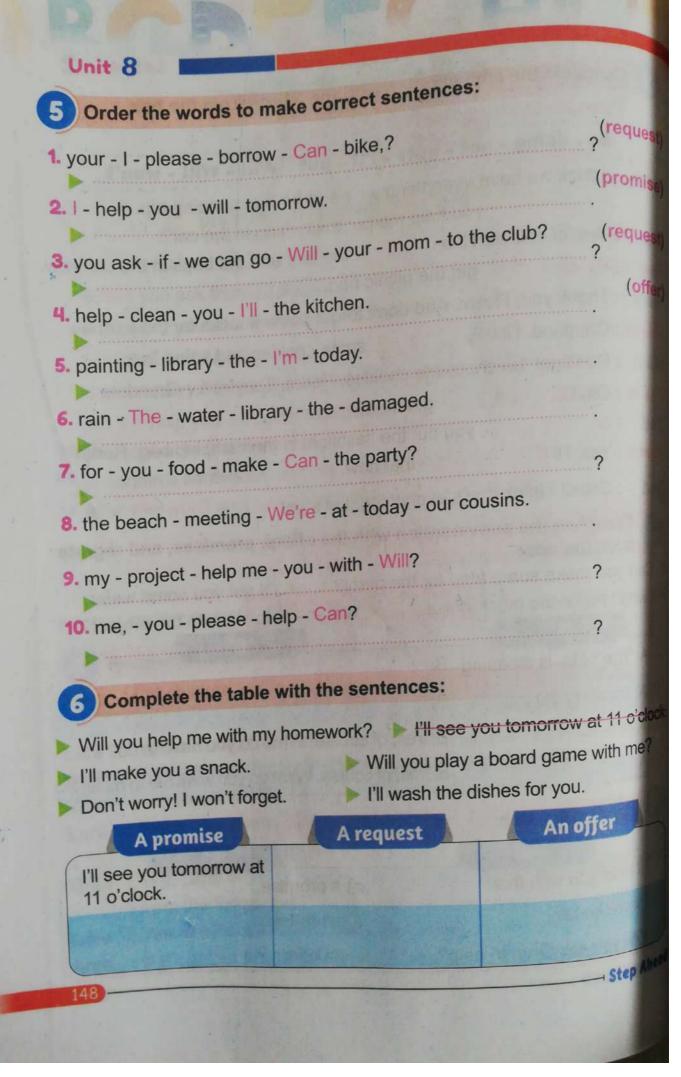
and Zein and Fady can help you paint.

onnect Plus 5 -













Do you have things at home which are old and broken ?
Don't throw them away! Bring them to our Repair Day and we will try to repair them.
We have volunteers from the community with lots of different skills, and they are ready to help you.

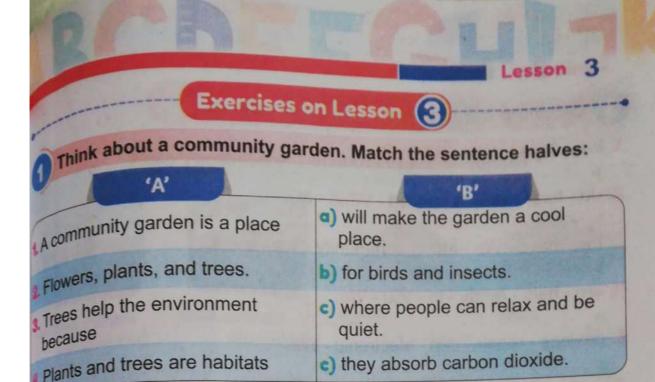
furniture, electronic devices
, and lots more!
Come to the Town Hall on Saturday May 7th from 10
am to 5 pm.
Tickets are LE10. We are raising money of for new sports equipment at the

sports equipment at the community center 3. You can also buy food and drink.

عطلان يوم الإصلاح متطوعون مجتمع اجهزة إلكترونية مبنى البلدية نجمع المال معدات رياضية مركز اجتماعي

TOU

Step Ah



# 2 Complete the conversation with the words from the box:

Every day, we throw away many kilos of rubbish. In many countries, rubbish has been recycled for a long time. They sort out rubbish into piles of plastics, tins, glass, cardboard, paper and so on. Sometimes they turn them into other useful things. The broken bottles are collected. They are then used to make new bottles. Paper is also used again. When we use recycled paper, we help to save trees. Recycling rubbish is better than throwing it away as it keeps the environment clean, and saves materials and money.

# Choose the correct answer: 1. Recycling (bottles – paper – plastic) saves trees. 2. Recycling (saves – wastes – throws) materials and money. 3. How do they sort out rubbish? 4. Why is recycling important?

# Unit 8

|            | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·     | : |
|------------|-------------------------------------------|---|
| <b>C</b> ( | Order the words to make correct sentences | Ī |
|            | Order the words to make our               |   |

| 1. live - Sara - does - Where? | VI. DI |                                                                                                                | ?    |
|--------------------------------|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                |        | Sales Sa | <br> |

.....

## Read the poster again and answer the following questions:

| 1. Who will repair things?     |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1. Willo will repair trilings: |  |

| 2. What kinds | of things can                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | people bring?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | - | 883 CM V2 |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-----------|
|               | the state of the s | and the second s |   |           |

| 3. What are they raising money | or? |  |
|--------------------------------|-----|--|
|                                |     |  |

## 5 Write an e-mail to your friend Hazem:

Invite him to share in the Repair Day that you and your friends are going to join to help save the planet and save money as well. Tell him about the project and how it's useful and tell him what you are going to do there

| rom:     | Service in the Control of the Contro | - |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|
| To:      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |   |
| Subject: | the two most years and                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |   |
|          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |   |
|          | <br>······································                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |   |

## -Lesson 4 Animal rescue



## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



animal rescue إنقاذ الحيوانات



wild animals حیوانات بریة



turtle سلحفاة بحرية



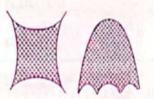
shell صدفة



flippers فنادغ /



shallow water میاه ضحلة



fishing net شبکة صید سمك



get stuck پیعلق ,



charity مؤسسة خيرية



bite (v) يعضّ



cissors مقص ِ



strange غریب

| مشكلة            |
|------------------|
|                  |
| كن حذرًا         |
| رقم التليفون ber |
| خائف             |
| صلب - جامد       |
| بحرص             |
|                  |

Connect Plus 5

#### Unit 8

| Activity Book    |                  |           |               |
|------------------|------------------|-----------|---------------|
| marine animal    | حيوان بحري       | lights    | اضواء         |
| rescue center    | مركز إنقاذ       | visitors  | زواز          |
| vacation         | غطلة             | accidents | حوادث         |
| clear blue water | میاه زرقاء صافیة | injured   | مماب          |
| boats            | قوارب            | habitat   | موطن طبيعي    |
| water sports     | رياضات مائية     | lay eggs  | يضع بيضًا     |
| building         | مبنه             | website   | موقع إلكتروني |
| contact (v)      | يتواصل           | area      | ملطقة         |

## **Conjugation of Verbs**

#### Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

|           | Present                | Past A       | PP _         |  |
|-----------|------------------------|--------------|--------------|--|
| move      | يتحرك                  | moved        | moved        |  |
| wave      | يلوّح                  | waved        | waved        |  |
| phone     | يتصل تيلفونيًا         | phoned       | phoned       |  |
| rescue    | يُنقذ                  | rescued      | rescued      |  |
| call      | يتصل تيلفونيًا - ينادي | called       | called       |  |
| look for  | يبحث عن                | looked for   | looked for   |  |
| protect   | تحصت                   | protected    | protected    |  |
| contact   | یتواصل مع              | contacted    | contacted    |  |
| touch     | يلمس                   | touched      | touched      |  |
| happen    | يحدث                   | happened     | happened     |  |
| disappear | يختفي                  | disappeared  | disappeared  |  |
| step back | يرجع للخلف             | stepped back | stepped back |  |

154

Step Ahead



| The Turtle                               | and Marian III                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                          | السلحقاة البحرية                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Reem and Talia were playing on the       | ا فجآة • Mom and Dad quickly                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| beach with their parents. Suddenly       | came into the sea. الشيء الغريب                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| O, Reem saw something strange in         | "What can we do?" هبکة صيد الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الل                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| the sea. "Look, Talia. Is that a ball?"  | asked Talia. The net وُ مُذَفَقُ وَ اللهِ عَلَيْهِ اللهِ عَلَيْهُ اللهِ اللهِ عَلَيْهِ عَلَيْهُ عَلَيْهِ عَلِي عَلَيْهِ عَلِي عَلَيْهِ |
| The two girls walked slowly to the       | was around the turtle's قالقة ق                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| strange object 2. It looked like a       | neck @ and flippers 3. قائفة 6                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| fishing net 6, but they could also       | "Can we touch it?"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| see a small head, and something          | "Sea turtles don't bite 9,"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| hard. It was a shell o! "It's a turtle!" | said Mom. و لا تعضّ                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Said Talia.                              | "But you need to be الحيوانات البرية                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| "It's stuck 6 in the net," said Reem.    | careful with wild animals 0                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| "It's frightened 6!"                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Waved to Mom and Dad on                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| beach                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| "We've found a turtle. It has a          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Problem!" said Reem.                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| salu Reem.                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| onnect Plue 5                            | - OF                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

#### The Turtle

"I saw a poster with the name of a charity o which rescues turtles," said Talia. "I'll phone it," said Mom. There was a small café on the beach with a poster and a phone number for the charity. Mom called it.

"Hello. My daughters have found a turtle in the sea. It has a net around its neck, and it can't swim well."

"We'll come to the beach now," said the woman.

Soon, a car drove into the car park and a man and a woman got out. "I'm Mariam and this is Adel," the woman said.

"Thank you for coming," said Talia. Dad and Reem were standing close to the turtle in shallow water b. Mariam got a small pair of scissors @ from the bag. With Adel holding the turtle, she carefully cut off the net .



Everybody stepped back @ and the turtle slowly began to swim. It could 🛈 مؤسسة خيرية move easily now. 🦺 بالقرب من They watched it swim away. Before 🚯 في مياه ضحلة it disappeared, Dad 🚯 مقص صغیر 🗗 قطعت شبكة took a photo. الصيد بحرض "Thank you! You 🐌 أخذ خطوة للخلف saved the turtle's

life!" Mariam said to the family. "Thank you for calling us. We always want to help," said Adel.

#### Exercises on Lesson



## Read and circle the correct word:

- 1. How did Talia and Reem feel when they were playing on the beach? (tired - happy - annoyed)
- 2. How did they feel when they found the turtle?

3. How did the turtle feel?

(worried - relaxed - sad)

(interested - excited - frightened)

4. How did everybody feel when the turtle swam away?

(happy - annoyed -sad)

- Step Ahead

|   |   | 10 | n | 4   |
|---|---|----|---|-----|
| _ | • | _  |   | 410 |

| Complete the summary of the story with the words from the box:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| bite - disappeared - rishing net - flippers - strains                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| While Reem and Talia were playing on the beach, they saw something in the sea. They couldn't see what it was. It was a turtle, was around its neck. It couldn't move its head or its and it was in danger. So, Reem's mom quickly phoned an animal rescue charity. Soon, a man and a woman arrived to help the turtle. They were called Adel and Mariam. Adel held the turtle while Mariam cut the fishing net with some scissors. Turtles aren't dangerous animals and they don't, So Adel and Mariam weren't in danger. After that, Reem, Talia, and their parents watched as the turtle swam away. Before it, Dad took a photo of the beautiful animal. |
| Read the story again and match the words to the definitions:  bite - disappear - fishing net - flippers - strange                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 1. some sea animals have these to help them move                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 2. what fishing boats use to catch lots of fish                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 3. unusual or surprising                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 4. cut something with your teeth                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 5. when something goes away and you can't see it                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Read again and answer:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 1. What was around the turtle's neck and flippers?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 2. How did the turtle feel?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 3. What did Talia see on a poster?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 4. How did Adel help?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 5. What did Mariam do?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| What happened to the turtle at the end?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Connect Plus 5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

#### Unit 8

## 5 Read again and complete the sentences:

- 1. Reem and Talia saw the turtle
- 2. The turtle couldn't swim because
- 3. Reem's mom ....
- 4. Soon, a man and a woman
- 5. While Mariam cut the fishing net, Adel .....
- 6. Turtles don't bite and they aren't
- 7. While the turtle swam away,
- 8. Before the turtle disappeared, Dad .....
- 6 Read the text and answer the questions: Activity Book

#### Marine Animal Rescue Center

#### مركز إنقاذ الحيوانات البحرية

We are looking for volunteers! We need people to help us at the Marine Animal Rescue Center.

Every year, we have more visitors who come on vacation to enjoy the beaches and the beautiful clear blue water. But when we have more visitors, we have more problems for our marine animals. There are more boats, more water sports, more garbage, and more lights at night from buildings and hotels. All of this is bad for turtles and other marine animals.

- Many turtles have accidents with boats, or they get stuck in fishing nets. We need volunteers to help us look after injured turtles at the rescue center.
- As more hotels are built, turtles lose their beach habitats. We need to protect the beaches where turtles come to lay their eggs. We need volunteers to work at night on the beaches, to protect turtles when they are laying their eggs.

If you feel excited about helping us protect turtles, please contact us on our website.

1. Why do people come on vacation to this area?

- Step Aheo

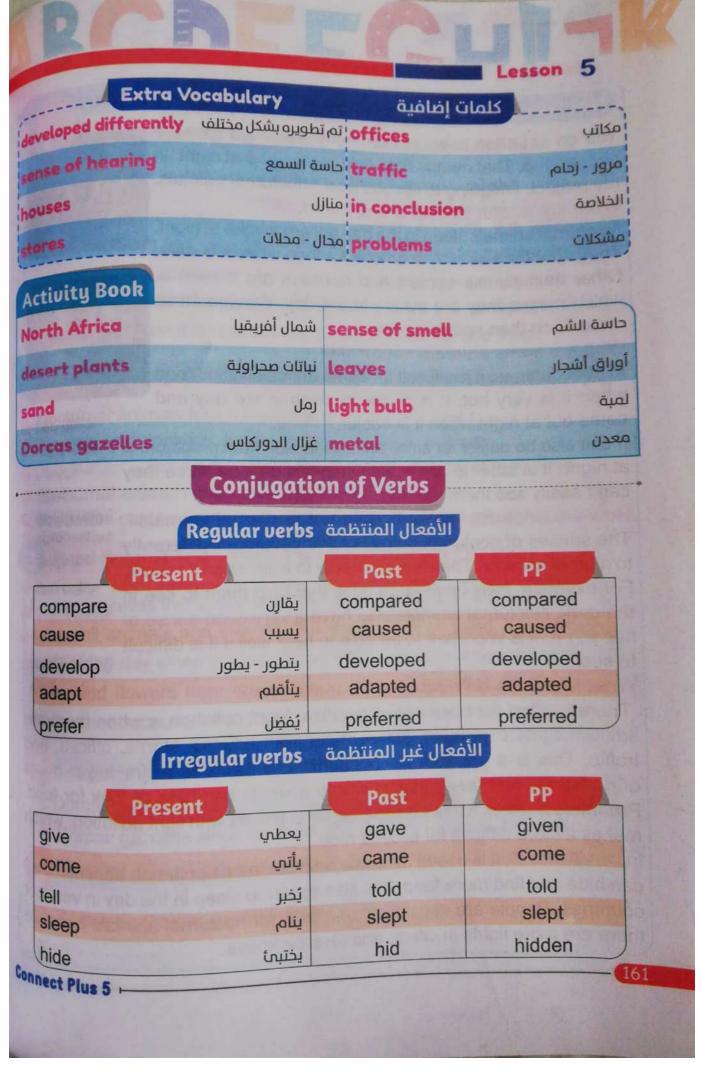
- 2. Why are there more problems for marine animals now?
- 3. How do turtles get injured?
- 4. What happens when more hotels are built?
- 5. Why do turtles come to beaches at night?
- 7 Order the words to make correct sentences:
- 1. were the playing on beach They.
- 2 saw She a strange in the sea thing.
- 3. found turtle a We've the beach on.
- 4. be careful need to You animals wild with.
- 5. the beach was café There a small on.
- 6. turtle The was water shallow in.
- 8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following elements:

birds - nice - happy - fly - sing - sweet voice - live - trees - build - nests - look for - food - feed - young - mouth



Connect Plus 5 -





## Nocturnal Animals व्यूप्रिक्शिक्ष

by Youssef Sabry

You do not often see a fennec fox o, because they are nocturnal . That means they only come out at night. In my project, I'm going to tell you about nocturnal animals.

#### What are nocturnal and diurnal animals?

Nocturnal animals sleep in the day but are awake at night. They hunt for their prey o or look for food when it is dark. Other animals like camels and donkeys are diurnal 9, which means they are awake in the day. We see these more often than nocturnal ones!

#### Why are some animals nocturnal?

In hot countries, it is difficult for some animals to find food when it is very hot. It is better to sleep in the day and come out at night when it is cooler.

It can also be easier for small animals to hide from predators @ at night. It is safer to come out when it is dark because they can't easily see them.

## How are nocturnal animals different to diurnal animals?

The senses of nocturnal animals have developed differently to diurnal animals. They have adapted to work when it is dark. For example, owls have large eyes that help them to see in the dark. Nocturnal animals also have a very good sense of hearing . It is important to be able to hear well if it is difficult to see.

#### What problems do nocturnal animals have?

There is often light pollution @ in cities. Light pollution is when there are artificial lights o at night, for example from houses, stores, offices, and traffic. This is a problem for nocturnal animals. There are fewer hours of darkness, and fewer places where animals can hide or look for food. Predators such as foxes can see better in places with light pollution, which makes it more difficult for prey to hide.

In conclusion ©, it is useful for some animals to be nocturnal, because they can hide and find more food. It is also easier to sleep in the day in very hot countries. People are causing problems of for nocturnal animals because there are more lights in cities, and less darkness.



ثعلب الفنك

حيوان ليلي

يخرجون

فرسة

حبوانات نهارية حبوانات مفترسة

سمع حاد

تلوث ضوئي

أضواء اططناعية

والخلاطة

السيبون مشاكل

**CS** CamScanner

Step Aher

## Exercises on Lesson (5)

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

dark - day - predators - nocturnal - night

- Read the project again and choose the correct answer:
- Nocturnal animals look for food when it is (hot dark).
- Camels and donkeys are (nocturnal diurnal) animals.
- 3. It is (easier more difficult) for small animals to hide at night time.
- 4. Nocturnal animals often have big (eyes heads).
- 5. Predators can (see hear) their prey better in places with light pollution.
- Read the text and answer the questions? Activity Book

Dorcas gazelles live in and near the hot dry deserts of North Africa. They are small animals and they are the same color as sand. They sleep for most of the day when it is hot. At night it is cooler so they look for leaves, fruits, and flowers from desert plants. Dorcas gazelles do not need to drink water because they get all the water they need from their food.

- A Choose the correct answer:
  - 1. Dorcas gazelles are (small big huge) animals.
  - 2 Dorcas gazelles sleep for most of the (night day darkness).
- Answer these questions:
  - 3. Where do Dorcas gazelles live?

Connect Plus 5

## Unit 8 4. Why don't Dorcas gazelles drink water? Order the words to make correct sentences: 1. animals - do - problems - What - have - nocturnal? 2. fox - is - animal - a - nocturnal - The fennec. 3. diurnal - and camels - are - Donkeys - animals. 4. sense of - have - Nocturnal animals - good - hearing - a very. 5. in - is - There - light pollution - cities - often. Read again and answer the questions: 1. Why are some animals nocturnal? a) in hot, desert countries, it's easier to hunt at night when it's cooler b) in some countries, there are too many people in places during the day 2. How have owls adapted to being nocturnal? d) they have a good sense of smell that helps them find prey b) they have big eyes that help them see in the dark 3. What do nocturnal animals have? a good sense of hearing b) long legs 4. What is light pollution? a) plastic and metal that is in light bulbs b) artificial light from house, buildings, and traffic 5. Why is light pollution bad for nocturnal animals? d) it's difficult for animals to sleep because it isn't dark enough b) there are fewer hours of darkness when animals can hide or look for Step

# -Lesson 6 Writing an introduction



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس









urban environment , بيئة حضرية

rural areas مناطق ريفية

absorb heat تمتص الحرارة









artificial اصطناعي

plastic pollution / تلوث بلاستيكي

traffic ; زحام - مرور

concrete

خرسانة

قمامة

| CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF THE | Extra Vocabulary  | كلمات إضافية    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| light pollutio                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | garbage تلوث ضوئي | mind Barel fore |

| problem    | street lights | أضواء الشارع |  |
|------------|---------------|--------------|--|
| surprising | ocean         | محيط         |  |

| the natural world | in the past العالم الطبيعي | في الماضي |
|-------------------|----------------------------|-----------|
| the natural world | 7 7                        |           |

| Activity | Book |
|----------|------|
|          |      |

|                    |                    |                        | - VENT HE    |
|--------------------|--------------------|------------------------|--------------|
| topic              | موضوع              | busy cities            | مدن مزدحمة   |
| find out           | يكتشف              | environments           | بيئات        |
| air                | هواء               | create James W         | پوجد - يخلق  |
| carbon dioxide     | ثاني أكسيد الكربون | charities and addition | جمعيات خيرية |
| <sup>0</sup> xygen | أكسچين             | affect                 | تۇثر         |

Connect Plus 5 -

## Conjugation of Verbs

الأفعال غير المنتظمة Irregular verbs

| Pi       | esent           | Past       | PP         |
|----------|-----------------|------------|------------|
| cause    | يُسبب           | caused     | caused     |
| research | يبحث - يكتب بحث | researched | researched |
| happen   | يحدث            | happened   | happened   |
| answer   | يُجيب           | answered   | answered   |
| explain  | یشرح            | explained  | explained  |

#### Writing an introduction

البة مقدمة عن موضوع (مدخل لموضوع)

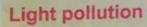
When you write an introduction to a project, you have to make the topic very clear. You can do this by starting with the questions that you are going to answer in the project. You can also explain what you are going to do.

عندما تكتب مقدمة لموضوع، لابد أن يكون الموضوع الذي ستتناوله واضحًا، يمكنك أن تبدأ بأسئلة سوف تجيب عنها في موضوعك، ويمكنك أيضًا أن تشرح ما سوف تقوم به.

البشر

#### Read these introductions

اقرأ هذه المقدمات



Did you know that humans • make more artificial light • now than at any time in the past? Cities are

getting bigger and stores, houses, and traffic all make light. We wanted to find out what happens to the natural world when there is a lot of artificial light.



Step Ahead

## Read these introductions

اقرأ هذه المقدمات

## plastic pollution

pid you know that it can take 400 years for plastic to disappear in the sea? This causes big problems for animals in the sea. I have researched 9 what causes plastic pollution and why we need to stop it.



#### Urban environments

Did you know that urban areas are often hotter than rural areas @? This might not be surprising because concrete o and buildings can absorb heat 1. This makes the air around them hotter. This is my project about the urban environment and why it can be a difficult place to live.



و مناطق ريفية

🕜 خرسانة

😉 يمتص الحرارة

## Exercises on Lesson 6



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

air - carbon dioxide - cleaner - environments - green know - plants - urban

that e and trees can help clean Did you 0 ...

in busy cities and urban @ the o

Plants absorb and they make oxygen. I have researched

how we can create more 6 spaces in our cities and how this

air in 6 environments. will create @

onnect Plus 5 -

#### Unit 8

Complete the information about writing an introduction with these words:

## answer - explain - introduction - questions - topic

When you write an o to a project, you have to make the

e very clear. You can do this by starting with the

that you are going to 6 in the project.

You can also 6 what you are going to do.

## 3 Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. big causes in problems the sea Plastic pollution.
- 2. heat Concrete buildings and absorb can.
- 3. pollution stop need to We plastic.
- 4. the cities lots of are lights in There.

## 4 Choose a project and write an introduction:

- 1. Five ways we can help the environment.
- 2. Why animal rescue charities are important.
- 3. How noise pollution affects people's health.
- 4. How air pollution affects people's health.
- 5. Why we need to protect our beaches.





sparrow عصفور



blackbird , طائر أسود



dove



bulbul



deafening يصم الآذان



loud صوتٍ عالٍ



quiet



turn off

|                          | extra Vocabulary                                                                                    | لمات إضافية | S Lissables  |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| birds with menty         | طيور - در مساهما                                                                                    | Good idea!  | فكرة جيدة!   |
| night                    | ليل المادية | tired       | مرهق         |
| dark ola lon             | داكن - مظلم 🔞 🔞 📆                                                                                   | pleased     | سعید - مسرور |
| bright and               | مشرق مسرو المحسفة                                                                                   | awake       | مستيقظ       |
| lights laber to          | أضواء أضواء                                                                                         | early       | مبكرًا       |
| <sup>aslee</sup> P (adj) |                                                                                                     | street      | شارع         |
| feel excited.            | أشعر بالحماسة.                                                                                      | noise       | ضوضاء        |
| don't know w             | <b>hat to do.</b><br>لا أعرض ما يجب عليّ فعله.                                                      | environment | بيئة         |

Connect Plus 5

#### The early bird



Speely Sparrow was asleep. It was dark and quiet ①. Then a noise woke him up. Boomy Blackbird was singing loudly.

The singing was annoying. Speely said, "Please be quiet. It's night! I was sleeping!"

Boomy flew over to Speely's tree. "I'm sorry," he said. "The lights in people's houses wake me up. I feel excited, so I sing!"

"Ah yes," said Speely, "the lights are strong and they're much brighter than the old ones."

"I don't know what to do," Boomy said sadly.

Speely said, "I know! We can tell people that their lights are too bright. We can sing together." "Good idea!" said Boomy.

So the two birds sang outside all the windows in the street. But nobody heard. Everybody was sleeping.

Boomy said, "Can we get help?"
Speely said, "Yes, I'll ask a friend.
Dovy Dove is always up early!"

So Dovy sang with them, but only Mrs. Samia heard because her baby was already awake.

The next night, Billy Bulbul joined them. The birds sang for hours. But everybody was still sleeping and nobody heard.

So the next night, Speely and



هادما

المع بريقًا

Boomy brought all their friends. All the birds sang very loudly.

The noise was deafening الآذان Everybody woke up and looked out of their windows.

Ten-year-old Amira said to her mom, "The birds are very loud! Why are they singing now? It's night!"



"It was dark at night when I was a little girl," said her mom. "Look how bright the lights are shining now."

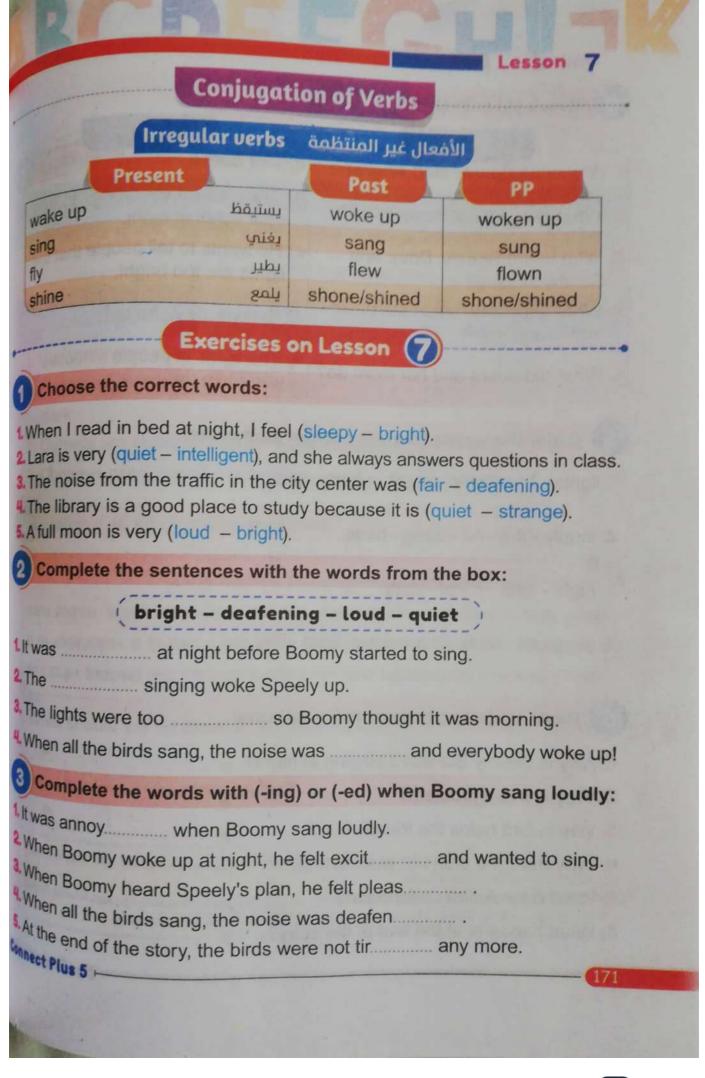
"Mom, maybe the lights wake up the birds, so they are not sleeping at night," said Amira. "They think it's morning because the lights are waking them up. Let's ask people to turn off their lights at night, when there is nobody around." "What a good idea, Amira," said her mom. "That will help the environment and

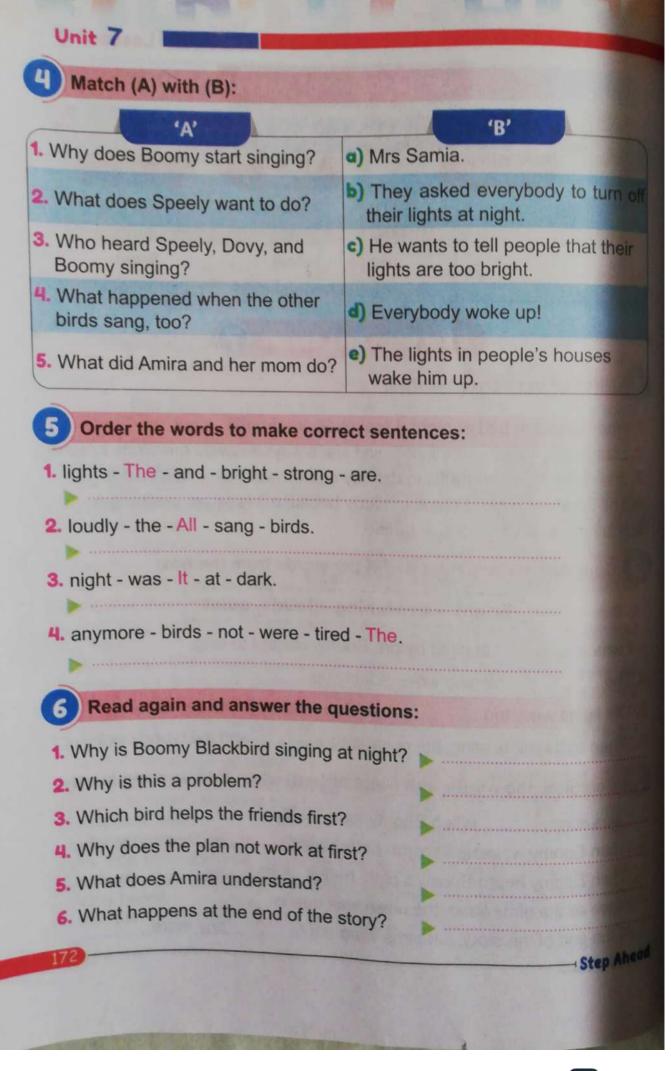
"That will help the environment and help the birds too."

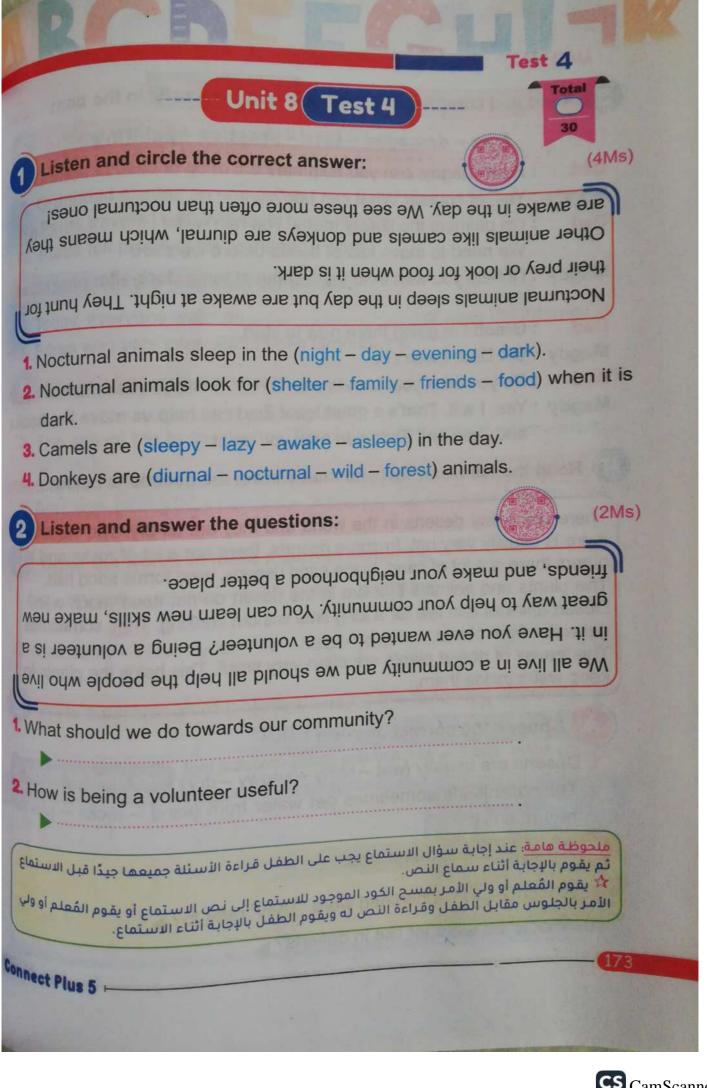
help the birds, too."

Everybody agreed and soon it was dark again at night. The birds could sleep. They were not tired any more.

Step Ahead







3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

## free - damaged - late - practice - painting

Dad : Hello Magdy, can you help me?

Magdy : Yes, of course! What can I do?

Dad : I'm painting the library today. The rain water \_\_\_\_\_it.

We need to move lots of books before we start!

Magdy: I'll help you with that! I can come at ten o'clock after basketball

Dad : Great! I'm going there now to start.

Magdy: OK Dad, I won't be

Dad : Do you think your friends are .....? Will you ask them to help?

Magdy: Yes, I will. That's a great idea! Ziad can help us move the books

and Zein and Fady can help you paint.

Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

There are many deserts in the world and they are all dry. The weather there is usually very hot. In some deserts, there are a lot of rocks and in others there is a lot of sand. In the sand deserts, wind forms sand hills. The plants and animals that live in the desert do not need much water. Desert animals can live for a long time without drinking. They sometimes get water from plants.

The leaves of desert plants are often very small. This helps the plants to keep water inside them.

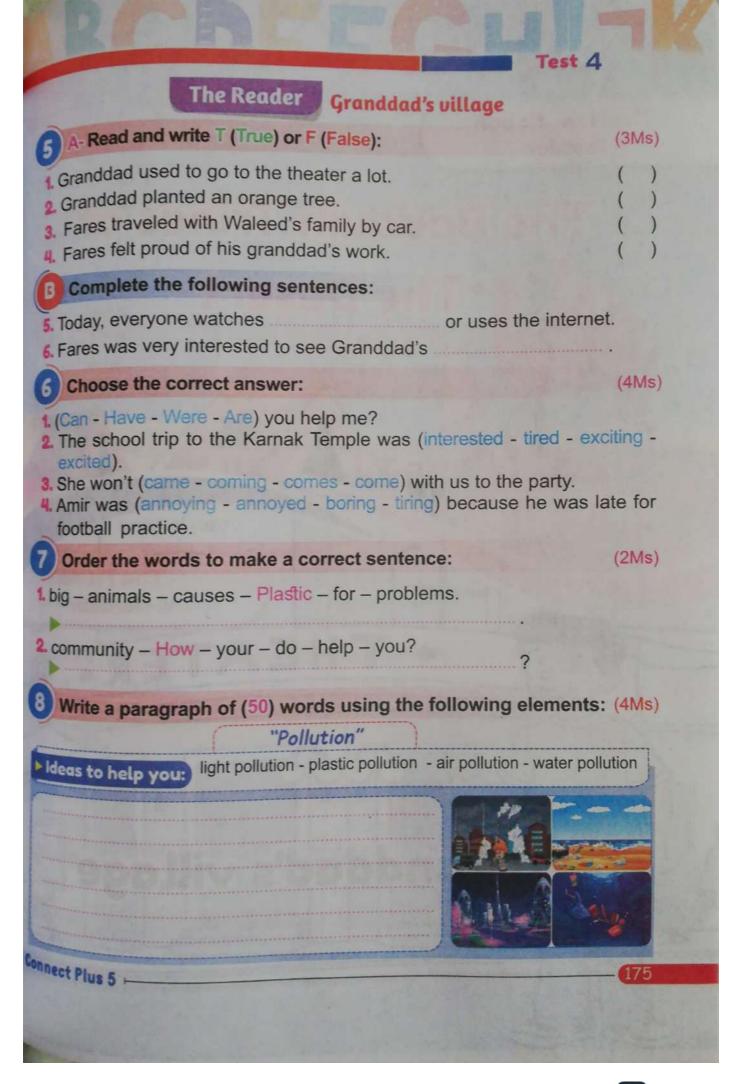
#### A Choose the correct answer:

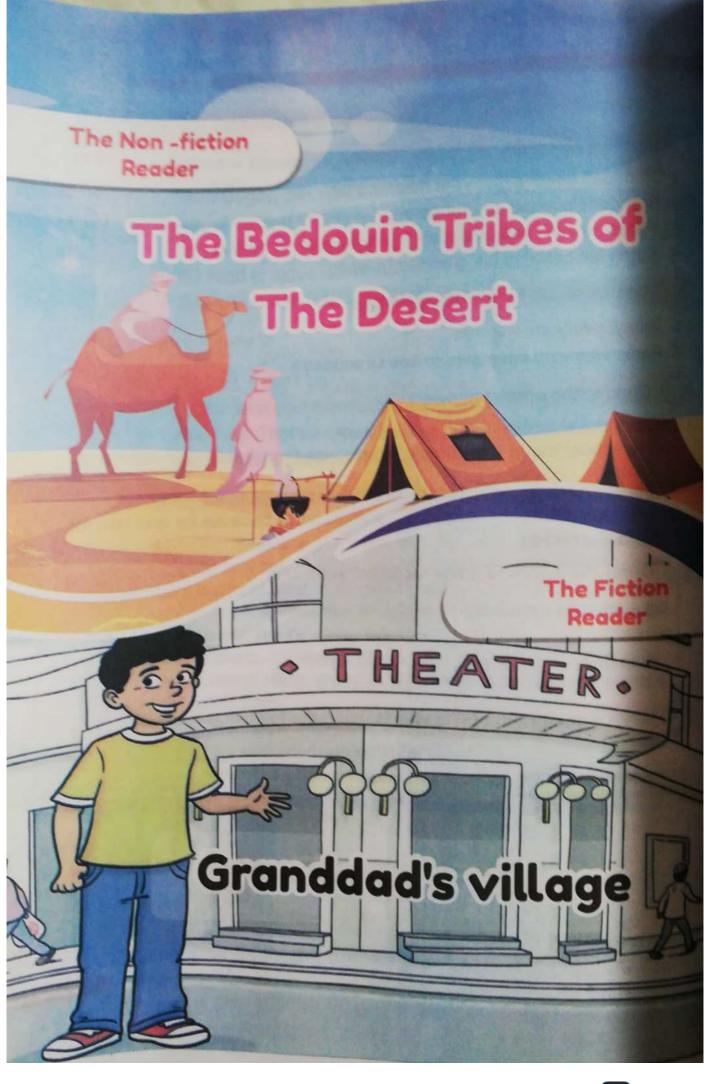
- 1. Deserts are usually (wet rainy snowy dry).
- Desert animals sometimes get water from (sand rocks plants mountains).

## B Answer these questions:

- 3. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?
- 4. What is the weather like in deserts?

Step Ahead







## Main Vocabulary

## الكلمات الأساسية

Story

| Bedouin tribes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | قبائل بدوية           | winter months                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | أشهر الشتاء                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Bedouin people                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | بدو                   | migrate (v)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | يهاجر                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Bedouin people<br>the Bedouin way of life                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                       | grow fruit and vegeta                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| The state of the s |                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | يزرعون الفواكه والد                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Bedouin tents                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | خیام بدویة            | an oasis                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | واحة                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| North Africa                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | شمال أفريقيا          | return to                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | تعود أس                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Middle East                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | الشرق الأوسط          | survive (v) فيد الحياة                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | مکان جاف حار                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| couth Sinai                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | جنوب سيناء            | hot dry place                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | العالم الطبيعي                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| The Sahara Desert                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | الصحراء الكبرى        | the natural world                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| At-                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | منطقة                 | made from wool                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | مصنوع من الصوف<br>من السهل نصبها                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| area<br>modern times                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | العصور الحديثة        | easy to put up                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | ينزل خيمة (يفكها)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| old traditions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | تقاليد قديمة          | take down (a tent)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | عرن حینت (یفدها)<br>وعاء                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Control of the Contro | رحالة - بدو           | pot                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 2009                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| nomads<br>at different times of yea                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | ar                    | herbs                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | أعشاب                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| ف من العام                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | في أوقات مختلفة       | Herbs                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | بهارات                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| almost                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | تقريبا                | spices                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | The state of the s |
| water under the groun                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | d                     | adapted well to                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | تكيفت بشكل جيد مع                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| water under the ground                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | ماء تحت الأرض ( مر    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | وسائل النقل                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | يحفرون آبا <b>ڙ</b> ا | Hansportan                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | جلد الجمل                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| dig wells                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | عبر الصحراء           | camel skin                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| through the desert                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                       | I distributed and the                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | offee                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| travel across the dese                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | السيد بفاس            | الساذنة                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | يسرب السابي والمهوه                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | سافر عبر الصحراء      | rugs                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | سجاد                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| keep goats                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | إداما الماعز          | I II LIA DOONIE                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | شعب مضياف                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| goat meat                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | حم الماعز             | Nospitable por                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | برحب بالضيوف                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| goat milk                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | تليب الماعز           | welcome guests                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | مر - بلح                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | :بن                   | 1-toc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | ىأوب                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| cheese                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                       | Laltor                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | and the second second                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| bread                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | نبز                   | - The second of  | طباق - أكلات                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Visitors                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | وار - زائرین          | dishes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | طام غذائي                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| sugar                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | ىكر                   | The second secon |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Annect Plus 5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

## Why do Bedouin people move their animals across the desert

The Bedouin tribes are the oldest group of people in the deserts of North Africa and the Middle East. They have lived in the area for thousands of years. There are over 4 million Bedouin people in the world. About 1,200,000 are in Egypt,



where they mostly live in South Sinai and the Sahara Desert.

The Bedouin way of life is changing in modern times, but they have very old traditions. They are nomads, which means that they move to different places at different times of year because of the weather. They live in the desert in the winter months when it is cooler.



In summer, it is too hot to be in the desert. They migrate to places

where they can grow fruit and vegetables, such as an oasis. It is difficult to survive in the desert, but Bedouin people have learned how to live in a hot dry place and how to use everything in the natural world around them. Bedouin



tents are made from wool, and they are easy to put up and take down.

Bedouins understand almost everything about the natural world, and this helps them to find water in the desert. For example, if there are birds in one area, or some small plants, there might be water



under the ground. They know how and where to dig wells, and they return to these wells every year to find water as they migrate through the desert.

- Step Ahed



Animals are important to the Bedouin way of life. They keep goats and travel across the desert to find food and water for them. to find milk, and the cheese made from this, is an important part of their diet. Goat meat is used in lots of dishes. It is cooked for a long



time in a pot with vegetables, herbs, and spices. But the most important animal is the camel. Camels have adapted well to desert life, and they are used for transportation, milk, and food. Camel skin can be used to make clothes and shelter, and camel hair is used to make rugs.

Bedouins are very hospitable people - they will always welcome guests to their homes and give them something to eat, such as dates or delicious baked bread. They drink hot tea and coffee, sometimes with lots of sugar, and this is given to visitors, too.



#### Questions with their model answers

## 1 Read and write T(True) or F(False):

|                                                                                                     | - 179 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Connect Plus 5                                                                                      | T/F   |
| There are over 8 million Bedouin people in the world.  About 1,200,000 Bedouin people are in Egypt. | T/F   |
| Oction tribas are the aldest aroun of poorle in the                                                 | T/F   |
| Goat cheese is made in a pot with vegetables.                                                       | T/F   |
| Tile Same place several times                                                                       | T/F   |
| Wilen Bedouins find water in the desert, they come back                                             |       |
| Bedouin people are good at using natural resources                                                  | T/F   |
| It is too hot to be in the desert in winter.                                                        | T/F   |
| 1. The Bedouin way of life is the same as it has always been.                                       | T/F   |
|                                                                                                     |       |

| Story                                                                                   | TIE     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| 9. Bedouins in Egypt mostly live in South Sinai only.                                   | T/F     |
|                                                                                         | T/F     |
| 11. Nomads are moving to different places at different and                              | T/F     |
| 12. In Summer, it's too hot to be in the desert.                                        | T/F     |
| 13. Nomads migrate to oases.                                                            | T/F     |
| 14. Redouin tents are made of wool.                                                     | T/F     |
| 15 Dealer to the service put up and take down.                                          | T/F     |
| 16. Redouins understand almost everything about the ristance                            | MAL.    |
| 17. Where there are birds and plants, there might be water                              | T/F     |
| under ground.                                                                           | T/F     |
| 18. Bedouins don't know how and where to dig wells.                                     | T/ F    |
| 19. Goat meat is used in a lot of dishes.                                               | T/ F    |
| 20. The most important animal in the desert is the elephant.                            |         |
| 21. Camels have adapted well to desert life.                                            | T/F     |
| 22. Goats are used for transportation.                                                  | T/F     |
| 23. Camel skin can be used to make shelters.                                            | T/F     |
| 24. Camel hair isn't used to make rugs.                                                 | T/F     |
| 25. Bedouins aren't very hospitable people.                                             | T/F     |
| <ol><li>Bedouins give the visitors hot tea and coffee.</li></ol>                        | T/F     |
| 2 Complete the following sentences:                                                     |         |
| 1. The are the oldest group of people in the desert of N                                | lorth   |
| Africa and the Middle East.                                                             |         |
| 2. About 1,200,000 Bedouin people are in                                                |         |
| 3. Bedouins in Egypt mostly lived in South and the Sahara I                             | esert.  |
| 4. There are over 4 million Bedouin people in the                                       |         |
| 5. The Bedouin way of life is changing in                                               |         |
| 6. Bedouins have very old                                                               |         |
| 7. Bedouins are, which means that they move to diffe places at different times of year. | rent    |
| 8. Bedouins live in the desert in the months when it is                                 | cooler. |
| 9. In, it is too hot to be in the desert.                                               | COOICII |
| 10. They to places where they can grow fruit and vege                                   | tables  |
| such as an oasis.                                                                       | lanies  |
| 11. It is difficult to in the desert.                                                   |         |
| 12. Bedouin people have learned how to live in a                                        |         |
| pl                                                                                      | ace.    |
| 180                                                                                     | p Aheaa |

- down. are made from wool, and they are easy to put up and take
- H. Bedouins understand almost everything about the and this helps them to find water in the desert.
- 15. If there are birds in one area, or small plants, there might be ......
- 16. Bedouins know how and where to dig
- 17. Bedouins return to these wells every year to find water as they migrate through the
- 18. Animals are important to the Bedouin way of
- 19. Bedouins keep and travel across the desert to find food and water for them.
- 20. and the cheese is an important part of Bedouins' diet.
- 21. is used in lots of dishes. It is cooked with vegetables, herbs, and spices.
- 22. The most important animal in the desert is the
- 23. Camels have adapted well to ......
- 24. Camels are used for ..... milk, and food.
- 25. can be used to make clothes and shelter.
- 26. Camel hair is used to make
- 27. Bedouins are very ..... people.
- 28. Bedouins will always welcome ..... to their homes.

#### Answers

| 1- F  | 2- <b>F</b>  | 3- <b>T</b> | 4- T         | 5- F         | 6- <b>T</b>  | 7- <b>T</b>  | 8- <b>T</b>  | 9- F  |
|-------|--------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|-------|
| •     | 11- <b>T</b> |             | 13- <b>T</b> | 14- <b>T</b> | 15- <b>F</b> | 16- <b>T</b> | 17- <b>T</b> | 18- F |
|       |              | 1           |              |              | 24- <b>F</b> | 25- F        | 26- <b>T</b> |       |
| 19- T | 20- F        | 21- T       | 22- F        | 23-1         | 27 .         |              |              |       |

| 1.0               | O Fount           | 3- Sinai        | 4- world           |
|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1- Bedouin tribes |                   | 7- nomads       | 8- winter          |
| 5- modern times   | 6- traditions     | 11- survive     | 12- hot dry        |
| 9- summer         | 10- migrate       | 15- water       | 16- wells          |
| 13- Bedouin tents | 14- natural world | 19- goats       | 20- Goat milk      |
| 17- desert        | 18- life          | 23- desert life | 24- transportation |
| 21- Goat meat     | 22- camel         |                 | 28- guests         |
| 25- Camel skin    | 26- rugs          | 27- hospitable  | zo- guests         |

Connect Plus 5

#### Main Vocabulary

#### الكلمات الأساسية

| Bedouin traditions    | التقاليد البدوية | north                  | الحاة الشمال             |
|-----------------------|------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| camels and goats      | جمال وماعز       | east                   | الحاه الشرق              |
| the falcon            | الصقر            | south                  | الجاه الحنوب             |
| amazing bird          | طائر مذهل        | the shape of sand du   | ريول الكثبان الرملية nes |
| predator              | مفترس            | develop in different w | ays نظور بطرق مختلفة     |
| prey                  | فريسة            | get lost               | يضل طريقه                |
| long distance         | مسافة طويلة      | the person             | الشخص                    |
| keep falcons          | يربب مقور        | festivals              | مهردانات - احتفالات      |
| rabbits               | أرانب            | weddings               | حفلات زفاف               |
| strong relationship   | علاقة قوية       | the natural world      | العالم الطبيعت           |
| the position of stars | موقع النجوم      | hunt for food          | يعظاد بدثا عن الغذاء     |
| direction             | اتجاه            | way of life            | أسلوب المعيشة            |

#### Bedouin traditions

As well as camels and goats, there is another animal which is important to Bedouins - the falcon. This amazing bird is a predator which can hunt for food in the desert. It can see very well, so it can find prey from a very long distance. Then it can fly quickly to catch it. Bedouin



people keep falcons and teach the bird to catch food such as rabbits for them. There is a very strong relationship between the person and the falcon!

How do Bedouins know where to go?

It's easy to get lost in the desert, but Bedouins use the sun to find east and west. They also know the position of stars in the sky at night, and this shows which direction is north. They can look at the shape of sand dunce the Ti



can look at the shape of sand dunes, too. The direction which the wind comes from makes the sand dunes develop in different ways. If the

Step Ahea

wind is coming from the east, the sand dunes will go from north to wind 15 All of this helps Bedouins to know where to go in the desert.

# what traditions do Bedouins have?

Poetry is an important Bedouin tradition. People remember and say long poems at weddings, parties, and festivals. They also say shorter poems as they travel on camels or work. These poems can be fast or slow, to help them as they work or move. The poems are often about family, the natural world, and their way of life.



#### Questions with their model answers

## Read and write T(True) or F(False):

| Read and write I (Irue) of I (False).                                          |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| The falcon isn't an important animal to Bedouins.                              | T/F |
| 2. The falcon is a predator which can hunt for food in the desert.             | T/F |
| 3. The falcon can see very well and find its prey from a long distance.        | T/F |
| 4. The falcon can't fly quickly to catch its prey.                             | T/F |
| 5. Bedouin people keep falcons and teach them to catch rabbits.                | T/F |
| 6. There isn't a strong relationship between the person and the falcon!        | T/F |
| There isn't a strong relationship between the personal transfer and the desort | T/F |
| 7. It's difficult to get lost in the desert.                                   | T/F |
| 8. Bedouins use the sea to find east and west.                                 |     |
| 9. The direction which the wind comes from makes the sand                      | T/F |
| dunes develop in different ways.                                               |     |
| 10. If the wind is coming from the east, the sand dunes will go                | T/F |
| from north to south.                                                           | T/F |
| Poetry ion't an important Redouin tradition.                                   | T/F |
| People of weddings parties, and lestivals.                                     | T/F |
| People also say long noems as they travel on carriers                          | -   |
| These poems can be fast or slow, to help them as they                          | T/F |
| Work Or move                                                                   | 11  |
| The poems are often about family, the natural world,                           | T/F |
| and the:                                                                       | 183 |
| and their way of life.                                                         | 103 |
| 148.0                                                                          |     |

## 2 Complete the following sentences:

| 1. The is an important animal to Bedouins.       |                |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| 2. The falcon is a                               | 4              |
| 3. The falcon can for food in the desert.        |                |
| 4. The falcon can see very well, so it can find  | rom a very     |
| long distance                                    |                |
| 5. Bedouin people falcons and teach the bird to  | catch food     |
| such as rabbits for them.                        |                |
| 6. There is a very strong between the person a   | nd the falcon! |
| 7. It's easy to in the desert.                   |                |
| 8. Bedouins use the sun to find and west.        | 18.8           |
| 9. They also know the position of stars in the a | t night and    |
| this shows which direction is north.             |                |
| 10. They can look at the shape of, too.          |                |
| 11. The direction which the comes from makes     | the sand       |
| dunes develop in different ways.                 |                |
| 12. If the wind is coming from the, the sand du  | nes will go    |
| from north to south.                             |                |
|                                                  |                |

#### 13. is an important Bedouin tradition.

- 14. People remember and say long ...... at weddings, parties, and festivals.
- 15. They also say shorter poems as they travel on ...... or work.
- 16. These poems can be ...... or slow, to help them as they work or move.
- 17. The poems are often about family, the ......, and their way of life.

#### Answers

| 1- F     | 2- T                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 3- T       | 4- F         | 5- T       | 6- | F    | 7- F  | 8- F   | 9- T     |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|--------------|------------|----|------|-------|--------|----------|
| 10- T    | 11- <b>F</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 12- T      | 13- <b>F</b> | 14- T      | 15 | 5- T |       | 1. 11  | -        |
| 1-       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 2- preda   | tor          | 3- hunt    |    | 4- p | rey   | 5- kee | ep       |
| 6- relat | ionship                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 7- get los | st           | 8- east    |    | 9- 8 | ky    |        | and dune |
| 11- win  | and the second s | 12- east   |              | 13- Poetry | /  | 14-  | poems |        |          |

→ Step Ahead



Fares lived in Alexandria with his parents o and his granddad o.

When Fares wanted advice, 6 he talked to Granddad to ask for his opinion, because he always had very helpful things o to say.

Granddad always had stories o to tell, too, and liked to tell Fares about

his life 6 when he was a child 0.



والديه

😉 نصيحة

🔮 أشياء مفيدة

😉 قصص

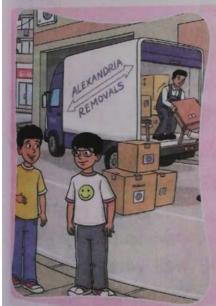
🕝 حیاته

و طفل

"What did you do when you were a boy, Granddad?" asked Fares.

Granddad said, "I studied hard o, then I played football in a park with all my 🕕 کنت أدرس بحد friends. It was a very good life for ساس 🙆 a young person @."





One day, Fares saw a new family moving intoo his building. There was a boy about the same age @ as him.

"Hi," said Fares, "I'm Fares. Welcome to the building!"

"I'm Waleed," said the boy. "We moved here from Cairo because my dad has a new job 6." "Oh, cool!" said Fares. 🕕 تنتقل إلى

Soon @, Fares and Waleed became good friends.

🙆 نفس العمر

وظيفة جديدة

🙆 بعد وقت قصیر



One day, Waleed visited Fares with his mom and dad. Waleed's mom asked Granddad, "Where did you live before?"

Connect Plus 5



"I'm from a small village 0," said Granddad. and he told her the name. She was amazed 0, because her family was from the same village! "Have you seen the new supermarket?" she asked. و قریة "No, I haven't been to my و مندهشة village for over ten years."

"Do you think 0 the village has changed?" asked Waleed's mom. "I don't know," Granddad said. "I used to go to the theater @ a lot." We loved it, but it might not be there now. Today, everyone watches television or uses the internet. It was very different 6 then. Even



schools have changed." "You were a teacher, weren't you?" asked Waleed.

"Yes," Granddad replied.

"It was exciting o teaching all those young people 6, and

some of them went to university @ because they studied hard."

🚺 هل تعتقد

و مسرح

و مختلف

و مثیر

و الشباب

و الجامعة



"What other things do you remember about your village, Granddad?" asked Fares.

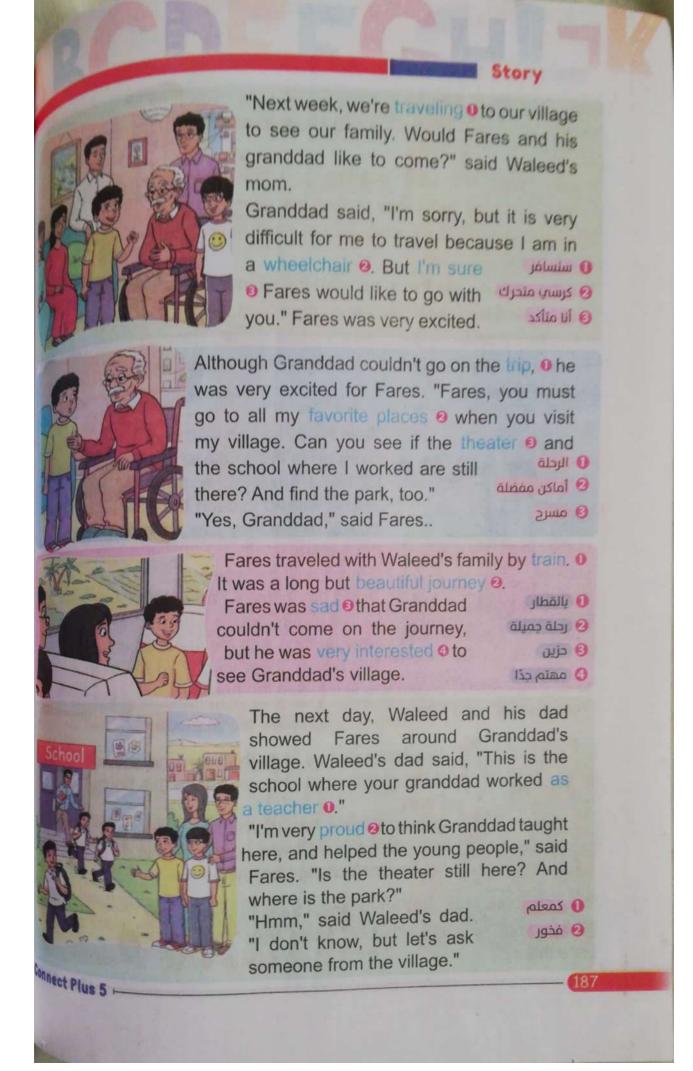
"Well, I remember 0 my old house 0. I planted some trees in the garden 6 when I was a little boy. They were growing well when I moved from the house. But are they still there or were they cut down o? I don't know." الذك

🥹 منزلي القديم "Which was your favorite tree?" الحديقة asked Fares.

"The fig tree," replied Granddad.

🖨 فُطَعوا

Step Ahead



Soon, they saw a woman by the road 0.

"Excuse me," said Fares, "do you know where the park is?"

"It was here," she said, pointing to some new houses. "But they built these houses last year."

"What about the old theater? Is that near here?" asked Fares.

"The theater's across the road," said the woman.

"They wanted to close it, but the villagers 2 at the school kept it open for our children 3 and grandchildren.

" Fares was very happy that the people of the village still wanted the theater.



ا في الطريق

القرويون

و لأطفالنا

الحفادنا



Then Fares had an idea 0.

"Let's go to the house where Granddad used to live! I have the address ②." Fares and Waleed walked through the village and to the house, where they saw a woman working in the garden.

"Hello!" said the woman.

"Hello. My name's Fares. My granddad used to live in this house when he was younger. Now he lives with me in Alexandria."

"It's nice to meet you," said the woman. "My

name's Mrs Amira. Would you like to see the house?"
"Yes, please!" said Fares.

فكرة العنوان العنوان



Mrs Amira chatted • to the boys and showed them all the rooms in the house. "I love this house!" said Fares.

Mrs Amira said, "We didn't decorate of it because we loved it when we moved in, so we didn't change anything."

0 تحدثت

😢 نزین (نزخرف)

"My granddad planted • some small trees in your garden when he was a little boy," said Fares. "Can I see them?"



"Did he plant a fig tree?" asked Mrs Amira.
"That's my favorite tree. We get lots of delicious
"That's from it every year."

They went outside 2 to see the antastic 3 fig tree.

"Wow!" said Waleed, "that's a cool tree!" Fares felt proud of this granddad's work.

🚺 فاكهةلذيذة

و ذهبنا بالخارج 😢

الرائعةفخور ب





On the train back to Alexandria,
Waleed's mom asked, "Did you enjoy
the trip to the village, Fares?"
"Oh, yes," said Fares, "I learned a lot
about Granddad when he was younger.
Thank you so much for inviting me on
this trip."

"You are very welcome," said Waleed's mom.

لدعوتي 🕕



When he got home, Fares told his family about his trip.

"Granddad, I have a present o for you," he said.

Fares gave Granddad a beautiful photo album o.

It showed all the places o Fares visited in the village: the school, the theater, and Granddad's old house and garden.

and Granddad's old house and garden. Granddad was very pleased to hear about all the buildings.

🕜 سعید

"What did you learn on your trip?" asked Fares's mom. "I learned a lot of things," said Fares. "For example, it's important to learn about your family when they were younger, so that you can understand of your family history of . And it was

great to learn about your life when you were younger, Granddad. You are so important 9 to us."

0 تفهم 2 تاریخ أسرتك

و مهم جدًا



Connect Plus 5 -

"Thank you, Fares!" said Granddad.

"And I am very proud you have learned so much, Fares!" said Fares's dad.



T/F T/F T/F

T/F

T/F

T/F T/F

T/F

T/F

T/F T/F

T/F

T/F

T/F

T/F

T/F

T/F

T/F T/F

#### Questions with their model answers

| 1 Read and write T(True) or F(False):                                                                                                            |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <ol> <li>Fares lived in Alexandria with his parents and his granddad.</li> <li>When Fares wanted advice, he talked to Grandmom to ask</li> </ol> | T/F |
| for her opinion.                                                                                                                                 | T/F |

| <ol><li>Granddad</li></ol> | always had | very helpful | things to say. |
|----------------------------|------------|--------------|----------------|
|                            |            | , ,          | 3              |

|             | amays had very helpful tillings | SIUS |
|-------------|---------------------------------|------|
| 4. Granddad | always had stories to tell      |      |

|    | ,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5. | Granddad liked to tell Fares about his life when he was a child.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| _  | Caralla de la constanta de la |

| 6. Granddad studied hard. | then he played basketball in a park with |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| all his friends.          | and the played basketball in a park with |
| 7 One day 5               |                                          |

| 7. One day, Fares saw a new family moving i |                  |
|---------------------------------------------|------------------|
| ady, i ares saw a new family moving i       | nto his building |
| 8. There was a girl about the               |                  |

| 200 | Various III |     | 2020 2020 |       |     | Tarring                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | moving into |
|-----|-------------|-----|-----------|-------|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 8.  | There       | was | a girl    | about | the | same                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | age as him. |
| -   |             |     |           |       |     | TANK TO SERVICE AND ADDRESS OF THE PARTY OF | ago do min. |

| -  | Ti                                                            |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Э. | The family moved from Aswan because it                        |
|    | moved from Aswall because the father has a new inter-         |
| 10 | The family moved from Aswan because the father has a new job. |

| 40 F                       |                |
|----------------------------|----------------|
| 10. Fares and Waleed becam | e good friends |
| 44 One de 14/1             | good mends.    |

|     | •        |          | -            |              |         |
|-----|----------|----------|--------------|--------------|---------|
| 11. | One day, | Waleed v | isited Fares | with his mom |         |
| 40  | 0        |          | ioned i ales | with his mom | and dad |
| -   | (-randad | 110001   |              |              |         |

| 40  |         |          |       |         | 111111111111111111111111111111111111111 |
|-----|---------|----------|-------|---------|-----------------------------------------|
| 12. | Grandad | used to  | go to | the the | ater a lot                              |
| -   | _       | - #152Ph |       |         | atti a lut.                             |

| 13. | Granddad | was | a | singer. |
|-----|----------|-----|---|---------|
|     |          |     |   | 0       |

| 14. | Granddad | remembered | his | old | house  |
|-----|----------|------------|-----|-----|--------|
| -   | _        |            |     | olu | House. |

| 15. Granddad planted some fl | old flouse.                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| a little boy.                | owers in the garden when he was      |
| 16. Grandad planted on       | A TONE OF THE PARTY OF THE ROOM INC. |

| 16. | Grandad planted | an orange troo |
|-----|-----------------|----------------|
| 17  | Faros is in a   | ordinge tiee,  |

| 17. | Fares | is | in | a | wheel | chair. |
|-----|-------|----|----|---|-------|--------|
| -   |       |    |    |   |       |        |

| 18. Granddad couldn' | t go on the to                                |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| Fares.               | t go on the trip, but he was very excited for |
| 19. Fares traveled   |                                               |

| 19. Fares traveled with | Waleed's family by car. |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 20. It was a long but   | waleed's family by car. |

| 20. It was a long but here us . | · arring                              |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 20. It was a long but beautiful | Ourney                                |
| 21. Fares was happy that Cra    | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · |

| and was happy that | Granddad acut                          |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------|
|                    | Granddad couldn't come on the journey. |
| 90                 | on the journey.                        |

| Story                                                                                                                                       |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 22. Fares was very interested to see Granddad's village.                                                                                    | T/ F |
| 23. The villagers at the school kept the theater open for their children<br>and grandchildren.                                              | T/ F |
| 24. Fares was very angry that the people of the village still wanted the theater.                                                           | T/ F |
| 25. Mrs Amira chatted to the boys and showed them all the rooms<br>in the house.                                                            | T/ F |
| 26. Fares felt proud of his granddad's work.                                                                                                | T/F  |
| 27. Fares learned a lot about Granddad when he was younger.                                                                                 | T/ F |
| 28. Fares gave Granddad a beautiful photo album.                                                                                            | T/ F |
| 29. The album showed all the places Fares visited in the city.                                                                              | T/F  |
| <ol><li>It isn't important to learn about your family when they were<br/>younger.</li></ol>                                                 | T/ F |
| 2 Complete the following sentences:                                                                                                         |      |
| Same Anne american Marie Marie School Same Shirt Sales His                                                                                  |      |
| <ol> <li>Fares lived in with his parents and his granddad.</li> <li>When Fares wanted, he talked to Granddad to ask for opinion.</li> </ol> | his  |
| 3. Granddad always had very things to say.                                                                                                  |      |
| 4. Granddad always had to tell, too.                                                                                                        |      |
| 5. liked to tell Fares about his life when he was a child.                                                                                  |      |
| 6. Granddad studied hard, then he played in a park with a my friends.                                                                       | all  |
| 7. One day, Fares saw a new moving into his building.                                                                                       | 111  |
| 8. There was a boy about the same as fares.                                                                                                 |      |
| 9. The family moved here from because the father has a new job.                                                                             |      |
| 10. Fares and Waleed became good                                                                                                            |      |
| 11. One day, visited Fares with his mom and dad.                                                                                            |      |
| 12. Waleed's mom was amazed, because her family was from the s                                                                              | ame  |
|                                                                                                                                             | 1    |
| 13. Granddad used to go to the a lot.                                                                                                       |      |
| 14. Today, everyone watches or uses the internet.                                                                                           | N I  |
| 15. Granddad planted some trees in the when I was a little                                                                                  | boy. |

Connect Plus 5 +

- 16. Granddad is in a .....
- 17. Granddad couldn't go on the
- 18. Granddad was very for Fares.
- 19. Fares traveled with Waleed's family by
- 20. It was a long but beautiful
- 21. Fares was very interested to see Granddad's
- 22. Waleed and his showed Fares around Granddad's village.
- 23. The \_\_\_\_\_ at the school kept the theater open for our children and grandchildren.
- 24. Fares was very that the people of the village still wanted the theater.
- 25. Fares and Waleed walked through the ...... and to the house.
- 26. Mrs Amira to the boys and showed them all the rooms in the house.
- 27. They went \_\_\_\_\_ to see the fantastic fig tree.
- 28. Fares felt ..... his granddad's work.
- 29. Fares gave Granddad a beautiful ......
- 30. Granddad was very pleased to hear about all the
- 31. It's \_\_\_\_\_ to learn about your family when they were younger.

#### Answers

| 1- T                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 2- F  | 3- T  | 4- T         | 5- T  | 6- <b>F</b>  | 7- T  | 8- F  | 9- F  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|-------|--------------|-------|--------------|-------|-------|-------|
| 10- T                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 11- T |       | 13- <b>F</b> | 14- T | 15- <b>F</b> | 16- F | 17- F | 18- T |
| The second secon | 20- T | 21- F | 22- T        | 23- T | 24- F        | 25- T | 26- T | 27- T |
| 28- T                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |       | 30- F |              |       |              |       |       |       |

| 1- Alexandria       | 2- advice             | 3- helpful    | 4- stories               |  |
|---------------------|-----------------------|---------------|--------------------------|--|
| 5- Granddad         | 6- football           | 7- family     | 8- age                   |  |
| 9- Cairo            | 10- friends           | 11- Waleed    | 12- village              |  |
| 13- theater         | 14- television        | 15- garden    | 16- wheelchair           |  |
| 17- trip            | 18- excited 19- train |               | 20- journey<br>24- happy |  |
| 21- village 22- dad |                       | 23- villagers |                          |  |
| 25- village         | 26- chatted           | 27- outside   | 28- proud of             |  |
| 29- photo album     | 30- buildings         | 31- important |                          |  |

→ Step Ahead

